



AV Receiver

# *RX-A2010*

Owner's Manual

Be sure to read "Safety Brochure" (supplied booklet) before using this unit.

**English for U.S.A.**

# CONTENTS

Accessories .....	5
-------------------	---

## FEATURES

What you can do with this unit .....	6
Part names and functions .....	8
Front panel .....	8
Front display (indicators) .....	10
Rear panel .....	11
Remote control .....	12

## SETUP

General setup procedure .....	14
1 Connecting speakers .....	15
Basic speaker configuration .....	16
Advanced speaker configuration .....	21
Input/output jacks and cables .....	28
2 Connecting a TV .....	29
3 Connecting playback devices .....	35
Connecting video devices (BD/DVD players, etc.) .....	35
Connecting audio devices (CD players, etc.) .....	37
Connecting to the jacks on the front panel .....	38
4 Connecting the FM/AM antennas .....	39
5 Connecting to the network .....	40
6 Connecting other devices .....	41
Connecting video/audio recording devices .....	41
Connecting a device with analog multi-channel output .....	41
Connecting a device compatible with SCENE link playback (remote connection) .....	42
Connecting a device compatible with the trigger function .....	42

7 Connecting the power cable .....	43
------------------------------------	----

8 Optimizing the speaker settings automatically (YPAO) .....	44
--	----

Measuring at one listening position (single measure) .....	46
Measuring at multiple listening positions (multi measure) .....	47
Checking the measurement results .....	48
Reloading the previous YPAO results .....	48
Error messages .....	49
Warning messages .....	50

## PLAYBACK

Basic playback procedure .....	51
--------------------------------	----

Selecting an HDMI output jack .....	51
-------------------------------------	----

Selecting the input source and favorite settings at once (SCENE) ..	52
---	----

Configuring scene assignments .....	53
-------------------------------------	----

Selecting the sound mode .....	54
--------------------------------	----

Enjoying sound field effects (CINEMA DSP) .....	55
Enjoying unprocessed playback .....	57
Enjoying pure high fidelity sound (Pure Direct) .....	58
Enjoying compressed music with enhanced sound (Compressed Music Enhancer) .....	58
Enjoying surround sound with headphones (SILENT CINEMA) .....	58

Listening to FM/AM radio .....	59
--------------------------------	----

Selecting a frequency for reception .....	59
Registering favorite radio stations (preset) .....	59
HD Radio™ tuning .....	60
Operating the radio on the TV .....	62

Listening to SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ .....	64
--	----

Connecting the SiriusConnect™ tuner .....	64
Activating SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ subscription .....	65
Selecting a SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ channel .....	65
Registering favorite channels (preset) .....	66
Displaying the SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ information .....	67
Operating SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ on the TV .....	67

<b>Playing back iPod music/videos</b> .....	<b>70</b>
Connecting an iPod .....	70
Playback of iPod contents .....	72
<b>Playing back music via Bluetooth</b> .....	<b>75</b>
Connecting a Bluetooth receiver .....	75
Pairing Bluetooth components .....	75
Establishing a wireless connection and playing back .....	76
<b>Playing back music stored on a USB storage device</b> .....	<b>77</b>
Connecting a USB storage device .....	77
Playback of USB storage device contents .....	77
<b>Playing back music stored on PCs</b> .....	<b>80</b>
Media sharing setup .....	80
Playback of PC music contents .....	80
<b>Listening to Internet radio</b> .....	<b>83</b>
<b>Playing back music in multiple rooms (multi-zone)</b> .....	<b>85</b>
Preparing for Zone2 or Zone3 .....	85
Controlling Zone2 or Zone3 .....	89
<b>Useful functions</b> .....	<b>91</b>
Registering favorite items (shortcut) .....	91
Controlling this unit from the web browser (web control) .....	92
Viewing the current status .....	94
<b>Configuring settings in accordance with a playback source (Option menu)</b> ...	<b>95</b>
Option menu items .....	95

## CONFIGURATIONS

<b>Configuring input sources (Input menu)</b> .....	<b>98</b>
Input menu items .....	98
<b>Configuring the SCENE function (Scene menu)</b> .....	<b>100</b>
Scene menu items .....	101
<b>Configuring sound programs/surround decoders (Sound Program menu)</b> ...	<b>103</b>
Sound Program menu items .....	104

<b>Configuring various functions (Setup menu)</b> .....	<b>106</b>
Setup menu items .....	107
Speaker (Manual Setup) .....	109
Sound .....	113
Video .....	114
HDMI .....	116
Network .....	117
Multi Zone .....	118
Function .....	120
Language .....	122
<b>Viewing information about this unit (Information menu)</b> .....	<b>123</b>
Types of information .....	123
<b>Configuring the system settings (ADVANCED SETUP menu)</b> .....	<b>124</b>
ADVANCED SETUP menu items .....	125
Changing the speaker impedance setting (SPEAKER IMP.) .....	125
Turning on/off the remote control sensor (REMOTE SENSOR) .....	125
Selecting the remote control ID (REMOTE CON AMP) .....	125
Resetting the Parental Lock code number (SIRIUS LOCK) .....	126
Switching the video signal type (TV FORMAT) .....	126
Removing the limitation on HDMI video output (MONITOR CHECK) .....	126
Backing up/recovering the settings (RECOV./BACKUP) .....	126
Restoring the default settings (INITIALIZE) .....	127
Updating the firmware (FIRM UPDATE) .....	127
Checking the firmware version (VERSION) .....	127
<b>Controlling external devices with the remote control</b> .....	<b>128</b>
Setting remote control codes .....	128
Programming from other remote controls (learning) .....	130
Editing device names .....	131
Operating multiple functions at once (macro) .....	132
Resetting the remote control configurations .....	134
<b>Using the simplified remote control</b> .....	<b>136</b>
<b>Updating the firmware of this unit</b> .....	<b>137</b>

## APPENDIX

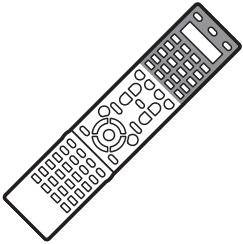
<b>Frequently asked questions</b> .....	<b>138</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>139</b>
Power and system .....	139
Audio .....	140
Video .....	141
FM/AM radio .....	142
USB and network .....	142
Remote control .....	143
<b>Error indications on the front display</b> .....	<b>144</b>
Error indications for SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ .....	145
Error indications for iTunes Tagging .....	145
<b>Glossary</b> .....	<b>146</b>
Audio information .....	146
Video information .....	148
Video signal flow .....	149
<b>Information on HDMI</b> .....	<b>150</b>
HDMI Control .....	150
HDMI signal compatibility .....	151
<b>Reference diagram (rear panel)</b> .....	<b>152</b>
<b>Trademarks</b> .....	<b>153</b>
<b>Specifications</b> .....	<b>154</b>



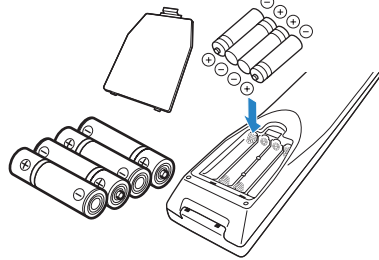
## Accessories

Check that the following accessories are supplied with this product.

### ■ Remote control



### ■ Batteries (AAA, R03, UM-4) (x 4)



Insert into the remote control in the correct polarity (+/-)

### ■ Simplified remote control

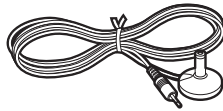


### ■ Power cable

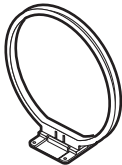


\* The figure of the supplied power cable differs depending on regions.

### ■ YPAO microphone



### ■ AM antenna



### ■ FM antenna



\* The figure of the supplied FM antenna differs depending on regions.

### ■ Easy Setup Guide



### ■ Safety Brochure

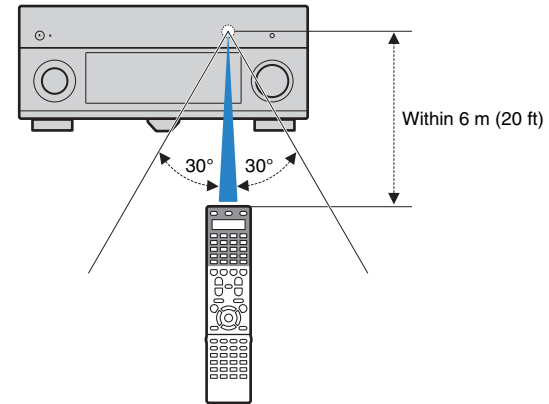


### ■ CD-ROM (Owner's Manual)



### Operating range of the remote control

- Aim the remote control directly at the remote control sensor on this unit during operation.



- Some features are not available in certain regions.
- Design and specifications are subject to change in part as a result of improvements, etc. In case of differences between the manual and product, the product has priority.
- This manual mainly explains operations using the supplied remote control.
- This manual describes both the "iPod" and "iPhone" as the "iPod". "iPod" means both "iPod" and "iPhone" unless the explanation describes exceptions.
- "!" indicates the cautions concerning operations or setup of the unit.
- "💡" indicates the explanations for better use.

# FEATURES

## What you can do with this unit

Ready for any kind of contents

iPod ➔ p.70    Network ➔ p.80 to p.83  
 USB ➔ p.77    Bluetooth ➔ p.75

\*Requires optional Bluetooth receiver for playback via Bluetooth



iPod



Network contents

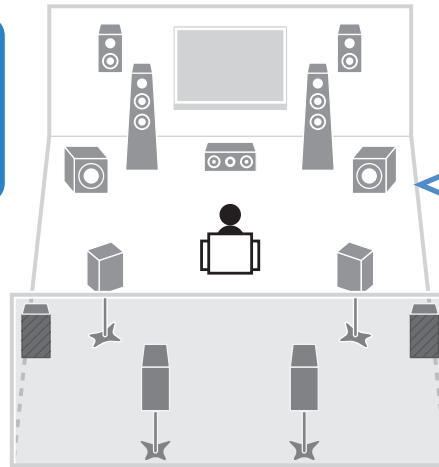


USB device



via Bluetooth

Audio



Speakers

Audio

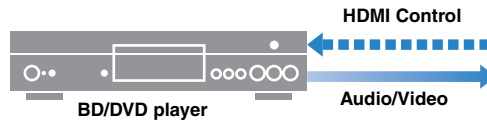
Supports 2 to 9 channel speaker system and up to 2 subwoofer connections. Allows you to enjoy favorite acoustic spaces in various styles.

Plus, bi-amp connections, channel expansion (with external power-amp) and multi-zone configurations to enhance your system ➔ p.21

Automatically optimizing the speaker settings to suit your room (YPAO) ➔ p.44

Sound field reproductions like actual movie theaters and concert halls from stereo or multi-channel audio sources (CINEMA DSP) ➔ p.55

Enjoying compressed music with enhanced sound (Compressed Music Enhancer) ➔ p.58



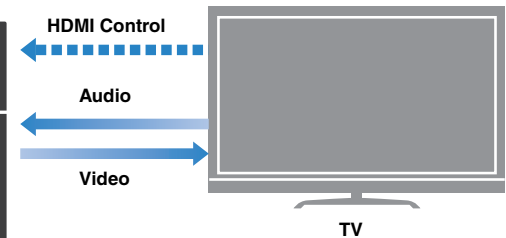
BD/DVD player

Audio/Video

HDMI Control



AV receiver (this unit)



TV

HDMI Control

Audio

Video

Operating external devices with the supplied remote control ➔ p.128



Remote control of this unit

Selecting the input source and favorite settings at once (SCENE) ➔ p.52



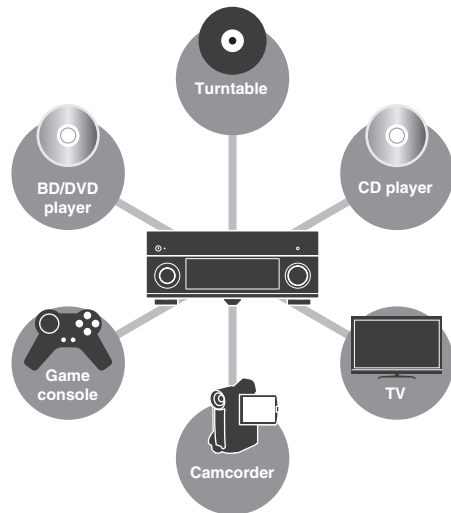
TV remote control

Operating the TV, AV receiver and BD/DVD player in combination (HDMI Control) ➔ p.150

## Full of useful functions!

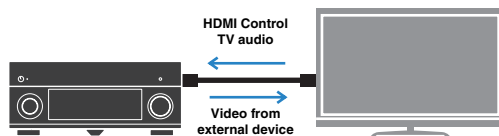
### ● Connecting various devices (p.35)

A number of HDMI jacks and various input/output jacks on this unit allow you to connect video devices such as BD/DVD players, audio devices such as CD players, game consoles and camcorders, and so on.



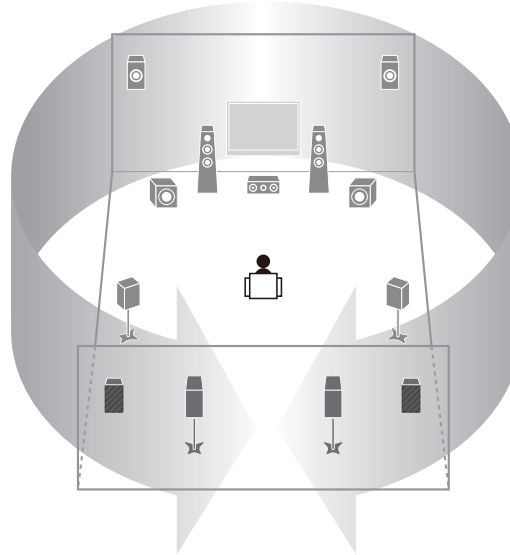
### ● Playing back TV audio in surround sound with a single HDMI cable connection (Audio Return Channel: ARC) (p.29)

When using a TV that supports ARC, you only need a single HDMI cable to connect the TV and this unit to output video to the TV, input audio from the TV, and transmit HDMI Control signals.



### ● Creating stereoscopic sound fields (p.57)

Connection of presence speakers enables to create a natural stereoscopic sound field in your room (CINEMA DSP 3D). Even when no presence speakers are connected, this unit automatically creates Virtual Presence Speaker (VPS) to produce 3D surround sound.



### ● Listening to FM/AM radio (p.59) or SIRIUS Satellite Radio (p.64)

This unit is equipped with the built-in FM/AM tuner (compatible with HD Radio tuner) and SIRIUS jack for connecting the SiriusConnect tuner (sold separately). You can register favorite radio stations as presets.

### ● Enjoying pure high fidelity sound (p.58)

When the Pure Direct mode is enabled, this unit plays back the selected source with the least circuitry. It allows you to enjoy Hi-Fi sound quality.

### ● Easy operation with a TV screen

You can navigate the various contents (iPod, USB, network, etc.), view the information, or configure the settings using the on-screen menu.

## At time like this

### I want to connect a playback device using HDMI for video and non-HDMI for audio...

Use "Audio Select" in the "Option" menu to specify the type of an audio input jack to be used for the corresponding input source (p.97).

### Video and audio are not synchronized...

Use "Lipsync" in the "Setup" menu to adjust the delay between video and audio output (p.113).

### I want to hear audio from the TV speakers...

Use "Audio Output" in the "Setup" menu to select whether to output audio signals through this unit and the TV (p.117).

### I want to this unit to be turned off automatically when not in use...

Use "Auto Power Down" in the "Setup" menu to set the amount of time for auto-standby (p.120).

### I want to change the on-screen menu language...

Use "Language" in the "Setup" menu to select a language from English, Japanese, French, German, Spanish and Russian (p.122).

### I want to update the firmware...

Use "UPDATE" in the "ADVANCED SETUP" menu to update the firmware of this unit (p.127). If this unit is connected to the Internet, the corresponding message will be displayed on the TV when a newer firmware is available (p.137).

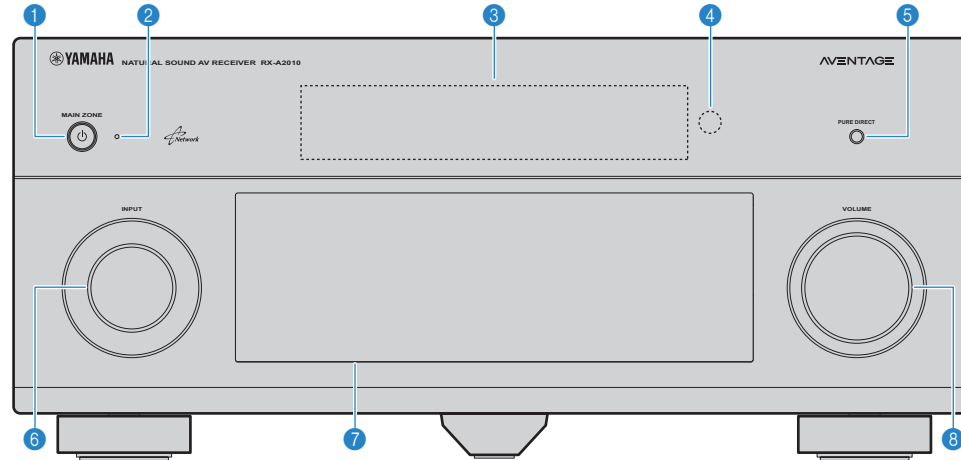
### There are many other settings to customize this unit.

For details, see the following pages.

- Input settings (p.98)
- Scene settings (p.101)
- Sound program and surround decoder settings (p.104)
- Various function settings (p.107)
- Information view (audio signal, video signal, etc.) (p.123)
- System settings (p.125)

# Part names and functions

## Front panel



### 1 MAIN ZONE

Turns on/off (standby) this unit.

### 2 Standby indicator

Lights up when this unit is in standby mode under any of the following conditions.

- HDMI Control is enabled (p.150)
- The standby through function is enabled (p.117)
- The network standby function is enabled (p.118)
- The iPod is being charged (p.99)
- An iPod wireless system is connected (p.71)

### 3 Front display

Displays information (p.10).

### 4 Remote control sensor

Receives remote control signals (p.5).

### 5 PURE DIRECT

Enables/disables Pure Direct (p.58).

### 6 INPUT

Selects an input source.

### 7 Front panel door

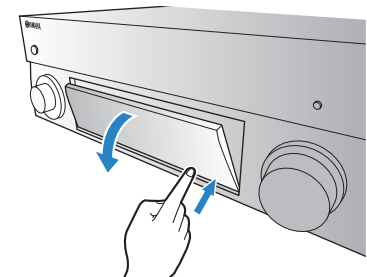
For protecting controls and jacks (p.9).

### 8 VOLUME

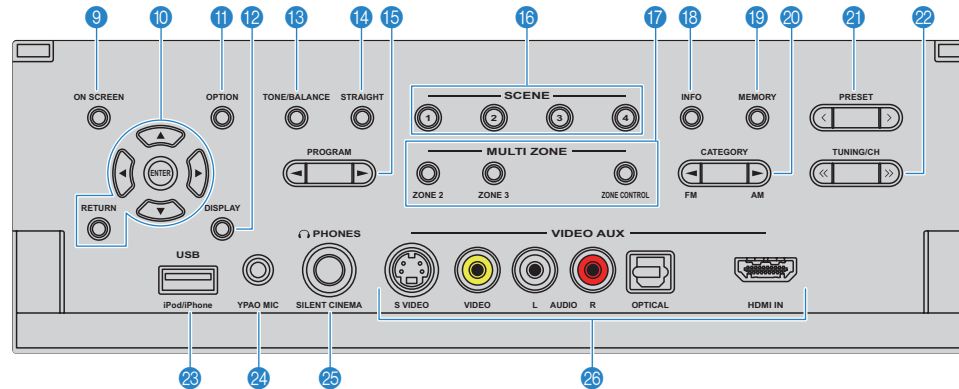
Adjusts the volume.

### Opening the front panel door

- To use controls or jacks behind the front panel door, gently press the bottom of the door to open it. Keep the door closed when not using controls or jacks behind the front panel door.



## ■ Inside of the front panel cover



### 9 ON SCREEN

Displays the on-screen menu on the TV.

### 10 Menu operation keys

**Cursor keys** Select a menu or parameter.  
**ENTER** Confirms a selected item.  
**RETURN** Returns to the previous screen.

### 11 OPTION

Displays the option menu (p.95).

### 12 DISPLAY

Display the status information on the TV (p.94).

### 13 TONE/BALANCE

Adjusts the high-frequency range and low-frequency range of sounds output from speakers and headphones (p.96).  
 Adjusts the right/left channel volume balance for Zone2 or Zone3 (p.90).

### 14 STRAIGHT

Enables/disables the straight decode mode (p.57).

### 15 PROGRAM

Selects a sound program or a surround decoder (p.54).

### 16 SCENE

Selects the registered input source, sound program, HDMI output and various settings at once. Additionally, you can turn on this unit when it is in standby mode (p.52).

### 17 MULTI ZONE

**ZONE 2~3** Enables/disables the audio output to each zone (p.89).

**ZONE CONTROL** Switches the zones (main, Zone2 or Zone3) to operate with the front panel controllers (p.89).

### 18 INFO

Selects the information displayed on the front display (p.94).

### 19 MEMORY

Registers FM/AM radio stations as preset stations (p.59).

Registers SIRIUS Satellite Radio channels as preset channels (p.66).

Registers USB/network contents as shortcuts (p.91).

### 20 FM/AM (CATEGORY)

Switches between FM and AM (p.59).

Selects a channel category for SIRIUS Satellite Radio (p.65).

### 21 PRESET

Selects a preset FM/AM radio station (p.60).

Selects a preset SIRIUS Satellite Radio channel (p.66).  
 Selects a USB/network content from shortcuts (p.91).

### 22 TUNING/CH

Selects an FM/AM radio frequency (p.59) or a SIRIUS Satellite Radio channel (p.65).

### 23 USB jack

For connecting a USB storage device (p.77) or an iPod via USB (p.70).

### 24 YPAO MIC jack

For connecting the supplied YPAO microphone (p.44).

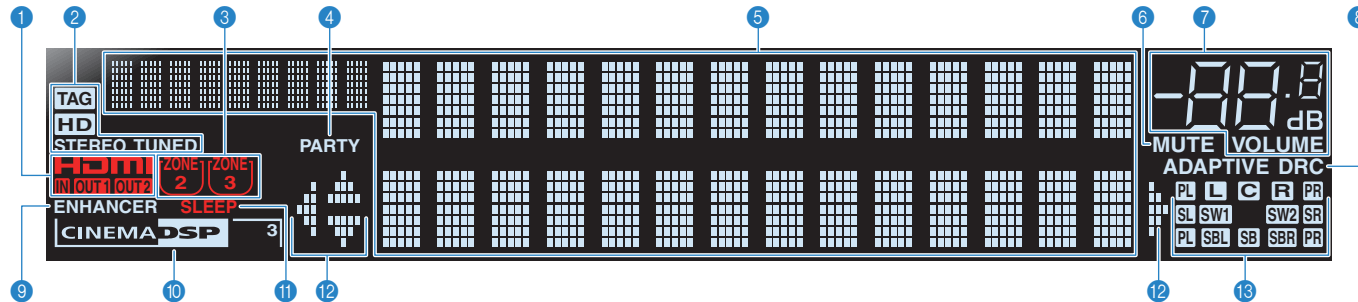
### 25 PHONES jack

For connecting headphones.

### 26 VIDEO AUX jacks

For connecting camcorders, game consoles, etc (p.38).

## Front display (indicators)



### 1 HDMI

Lights up during normal HDMI communication.

#### IN

Lights up when HDMI signals are being input.

#### OUT1/OUT2

Indicate the HDMI OUT jacks currently outputting an HDMI signal.

### 2 TAG

Lights up when the selected HD Radio program (or song) supports iTunes Tagging (p.61).

#### HD

Lights up when this unit is receiving an HD Radio station signal.

#### STEREO

Lights up when this unit is receiving a stereo FM radio signal.

#### TUNED

Lights up when this unit is receiving an FM/AM radio station signal.

### 3 ZONE indicators

Light up when the audio output to Zone2 or Zone3 is enabled.

### 4 PARTY

Lights up when this unit is in the party mode.

### 5 Information display

Displays the current status (input name, sound mode name, etc). You can switch the information by pressing INFO (p.94).

### 6 MUTE

Flashes when audio is muted.

### 7 Volume indicator

Indicates the current volume.

### 8 ADAPTIVE DRC

Lights up when Adaptive DRC (p.96) is working.

### 9 ENHANCER

Lights up when Compressed Music Enhancer (p.58) is working.

### 10 CINEMA DSP

Lights up when CINEMA DSP (p.55) is working.

#### CINEMA DSP 3D

Lights up when CINEMA DSP 3D (p.57) is working.

### 11 SLEEP

Lights up when the sleep timer is on.

### 12 Cursor indicators

Indicate the remote control cursor keys currently operational.

### 13 Speaker indicators

Indicate speaker terminals from which signals are output.

**L** Front speaker (L)

**R** Front speaker (R)

**C** Center speaker

**SL** Surround speaker (L)

**SR** Surround speaker (R)

**SBL** Surround back speaker (L)

**SBR** Surround back speaker (R)

**SB** Surround back speaker

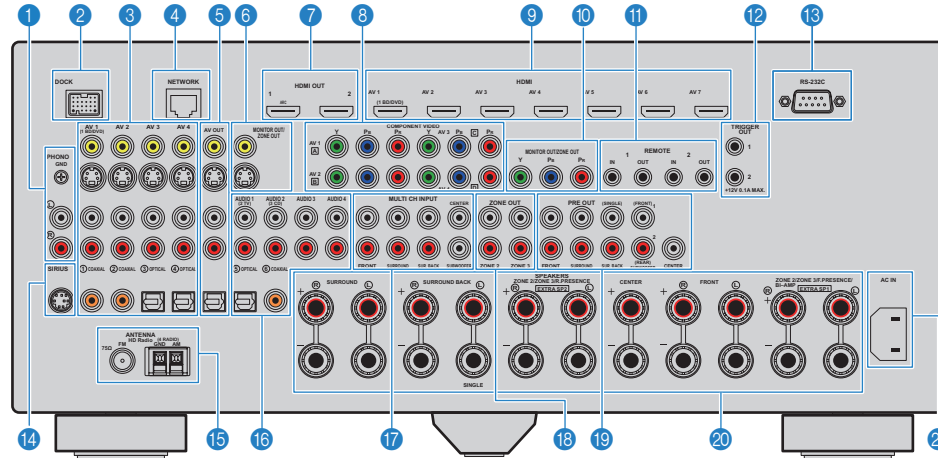
**PL** Front/rear presence speakers (L)

**PR** Front/rear presence speakers (R)

**SW1** Subwoofer (1)

**SW2** Subwoofer (2)

# Rear panel



## 1 PHONO jacks

For connecting a turntable (p.37).

## 2 DOCK jack

For connecting an optional Yamaha products such as iPod dock (p.71), iPod wireless system (p.71), and Bluetooth receiver (p.75).

## 3 AV1~4 jacks

For connecting video/audio playback devices to input video/audio signals (p.35).

## 4 NETWORK jack

For connecting to the network (p.40).

## 5 AV OUT jacks

For outputting video/audio to a recording device (VCR, tape deck, etc.) (p.41).

## 6 MONITOR OUT/ZONE OUT (composite video/S-video) jacks

For connecting a TV compatible with composite video or S-video to output video signals (p.33).  
For connecting a zone video monitor (p.87).

## 7 HDMI OUT 1~2 jacks

For connecting HDMI-compatible TVs to output video/audio signals (p.29). When using ARC, TV audio signal is input through the HDMI OUT 1 jack.

## 8 COMPONENT VIDEO (AV1~4) jacks

For connecting video playback devices compatible with component video to input video signals (p.36).

## 9 HDMI (AV1~7) jacks

For connecting HDMI-compatible playback devices to input video/audio signals (p.35).

## 10 MONITOR OUT/ZONE OUT (component video) jacks

For connecting a TV compatible with component video to output video signals (p.33).  
For connecting a zone video monitor (p.87).

## 11 REMOTE 1~2 (IN/OUT) jacks

For connecting a Yamaha product compatible with SCENE link playback (p.42), or connecting an infrared signal receiver/emitter to operate devices including this unit from another room (p.88).

## 12 TRIGGER OUT 1~2 jacks

For connecting devices that support the trigger function (p.42).

## 13 RS-232C terminal

This is a control expansion terminal for custom installation. Consult your dealer for details.

## 14 SIRIUS jack

For connecting a SiriusConnect tuner (sold separately) (p.64).

## 15 ANTENNA jacks

For connecting FM and AM antennas (p.39).

## 16 AUDIO1~4 jacks

For connecting audio playback devices to input audio signals (p.37).

## 17 MULTI CH INPUT jacks

For connecting a device that supports multi-channel output to input audio signals (p.41).

## 18 ZONE OUT jacks

For connecting an external amplifier used in Zone2 or Zone3 to output audio signals (p.86).

## 19 PRE OUT jacks

For connecting subwoofers with built-in amplifier (p.20) or an external power amplifier (p.27).

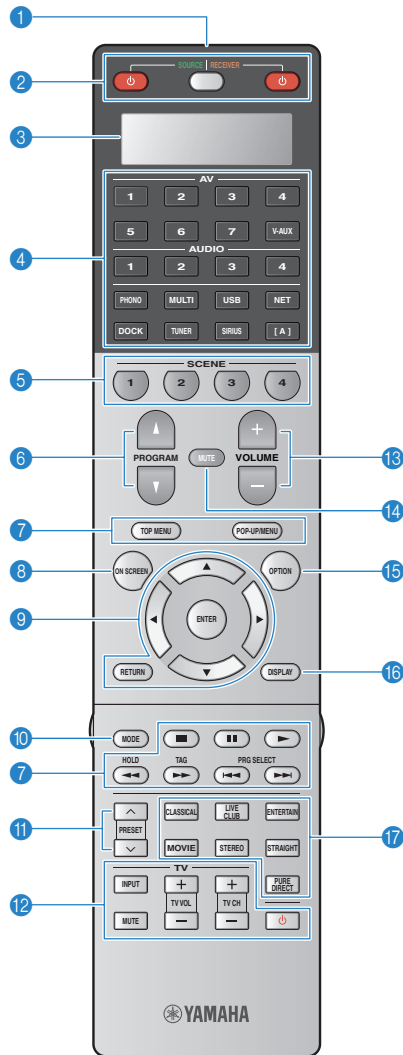
## 20 SPEAKERS terminals

For connecting speakers (p.15).

## 21 AC IN

For connecting the supplied power cable (p.43).

# Remote control



## 1 Remote control signal transmitter

Transmits infrared signals.

## 2 SOURCE

Turns on/off an external device.

## SOURCE/RECEIVER

Switches the devices (this unit or external device) to operate with the remote control (p.130). You can operate this unit when this key lights up in orange, and an external device when this key lights up in green.

## RECEIVER

Turns on/off (standby) this unit.

## 3 Display window

Displays remote control information.

## 4 Input selection keys

Select an input source to play back.

- AV1~7** AV 1~7 jacks
- V-AUX** VIDEO AUX jacks (on the front panel)
- AUDIO1~4** AUDIO 1~4 jacks
- PHONO** PHONO jacks
- MULTI** MULTI CH INPUT jacks
- USB** USB jack (on the front panel)
- NET** NETWORK jacks (press repeatedly to select a desired network source)
- DOCK** DOCK jack
- TUNER** FM/AM radio
- SIRIUS** SIRIUS jack
- [A]** Changes the external device to operate with the remote control without switching the input source.

## 5 SCENE

Selects the assigned input source, sound program, HDMI output and various settings at once. Additionally, you can turn on this unit when it is in standby mode (p.52).

## 6 PROGRAM

Selects a sound program (p.54).

## 7 External device operation keys

Operate playback and menu display etc. for external devices (p.130).

## 8 ON SCREEN

Displays the on-screen menu on the TV.

## 9 Menu operation keys

- Cursor keys** Select a menu or a parameter.
- ENTER** Confirms a selected item.
- RETURN** Returns to the previous screen.

## 10 MODE

Switches between stereo and monaural for FM radio reception. Switches the iPod operation modes (p.73).

## 11 PRESET

Selects a preset FM/AM radio station (p.60).  
Selects a preset SIRIUS Satellite Radio channel (p.66).  
Selects a USB/network content from shortcuts (p.91).

## 12 TV operation keys

Operate TV input, TV volume, etc (p.129).

## 13 VOLUME

Adjusts the volume.

## 14 MUTE

Mutes the audio output.

## 15 OPTION

Displays the option menu (p.95).

## 16 DISPLAY

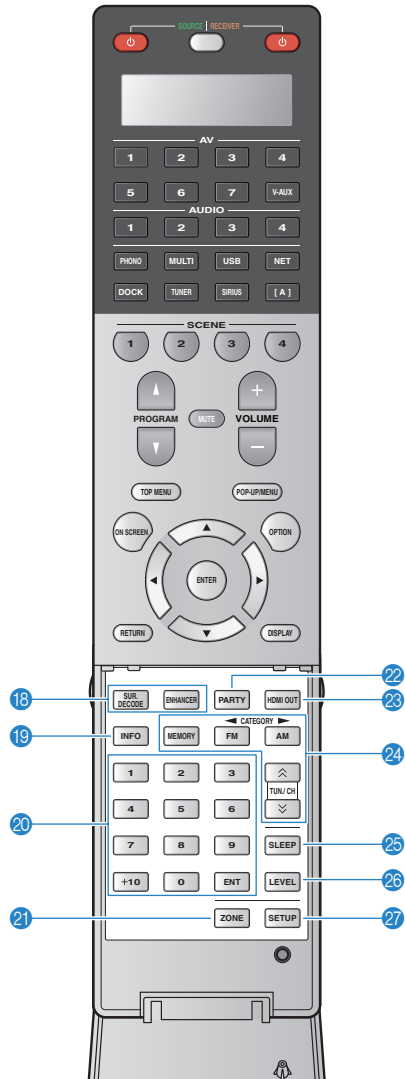
Displays the status information on the TV (p.94).

## 17 Sound mode keys

Select a sound mode (p.54).



## ■ Inside of the remote control cover



### 18 Sound mode keys

Select a sound mode (p.54).

### 19 INFO

Select the information displayed on the front display (p.94).

### 20 Numeric keys

Enter numerical values such as radio frequencies.

### 21 ZONE

Switches the zones (main, Zone2 or Zone3) to operate with the remote control (p.89).

### 22 PARTY

Turns on/off the party mode (p.90).

### 23 HDMI OUT

Selects HDMI OUT jacks to be used for video/audio output (p.51).

### 24 Radio keys

Operate the FM/AM radio when "TUNER" is selected as the input source or SIRIUS Satellite Radio when "SIRIUS" is selected.

**MEMORY** Registers FM/AM radio stations or SIRIUS Satellite Radio channels as presets.

**FM** Switches to FM radio.

**AM** Switches to AM radio.

**(CATEGORY)** Selects a channel category for SIRIUS Satellite Radio.

**TUN./CH** Selects an FM/AM radio frequency or a SIRIUS Satellite Radio channel.

### 25 SLEEP

Switches this unit to standby mode automatically after a specified period of time has elapsed (sleep timer). Press repeatedly to set the time (120 min, 90 min, 60 min, 30 min, off).

### 26 LEVEL

Adjusts the volume of each speaker (p.111).

### 27 SETUP

Switches the remote control to the setup mode (p.128)



- To operate external devices with the remote control, register a remote control code for each device in advance (p.128).

# SETUP

## General setup procedure

### 1 Connecting speakers (p.15)

#### Basic speaker configuration (p.16)

Select the speaker layout and connect the speakers to this unit.

#### Advanced speaker configuration (p.21)

Apply bi-amp connections, channel expansion (using an external power amplifier) or multi-zone configurations to enhance the system.

### 2 Connecting a TV (p.29)

Connect a TV to this unit.

### 3 Connecting playback devices (p.35)

Connect video devices (BD/DVD players, etc.) and audio devices (CD players, etc.) to this unit.

### 4 Connecting the FM/AM antennas (p.39)

Connect the supplied FM/AM antennas to this unit.

### 5 Connecting to the network (p.40)

Connect this unit to the network.

### 6 Connecting other devices (p.41)

Connect external devices such as recording devices.

### 7 Connecting the power cable (p.43)

After all the connections are complete, plug in the power cable.

### 8 Optimizing the speaker settings automatically (YPAO) (p.44)

Optimize the speaker settings such as volume balance and acoustic parameters to suit your room (YPAO).

Now all the preparations are complete. Enjoy playing movies, music, radio, etc. with this unit!

# 1 Connecting speakers

This unit has 9 built-in amplifiers. You can connect 2 to 11 speakers and up to 2 subwoofers (with built-in amplifier) to create the favorite acoustic space in your room. You can also apply bi-amp connections, channel expansion (using an external power amplifier) or multi-zone configurations to enhance your system (p.21).

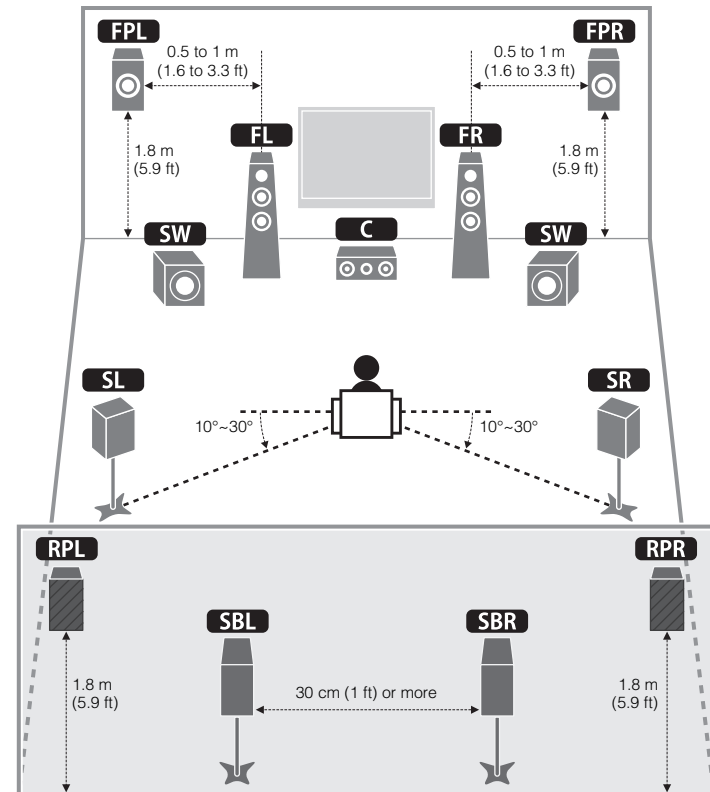
**Caution**

- This unit is configured for 8-ohm speakers at the factory. When connecting 6-ohm speakers, set the speaker impedance of this unit to “6 Ω MIN”. In this case, you can also use 4-ohm speakers as the front speakers. For details, see “Setting the speaker impedance” (p.18).

**Functions of each speaker**

Speaker type	Abbr.	Function
Front (L)	<b>FL</b>	Produce front right/left channel sounds (stereo sounds).
Front (R)	<b>FR</b>	
Center	<b>C</b>	Produces center channel sounds (dialogs, vocals, etc).
Surround (L)	<b>SL</b>	Produce surround right/left channel sounds. Surround speakers also produce surround back channel sounds when no surround back speakers are connected.
Surround (R)	<b>SR</b>	
Surround back (L)	<b>SBL</b>	Produce surround back right/left channel sounds. When no surround back speakers are connected, Surround back channel sounds are produced from the surround speakers.
Surround back (R)	<b>SBR</b>	
Front presence (L)	<b>FPL</b>	Produce CINEMA DSP effect sounds. In combination with CINEMA DSP 3D (p.57), the presence speakers create a natural stereoscopic sound field in your room.
Front presence (R)	<b>FPR</b>	
Rear presence (L)	<b>RPL</b>	
Rear presence (R)	<b>RPR</b>	
Subwoofer	<b>SW</b>	Produces LFE (low-frequency effect) channel sounds and reinforces bass parts of other channels. This channel is counted as “0.1”. You can connect 2 subwoofers (with built-in amplifier) to this unit and place them on the right/left (or front/rear) sides of the room.

**Ideal speaker layout**



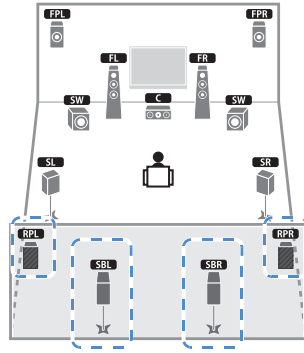
- We recommend using presence speakers to have a full effect of the stereoscopic sound fields. However, this unit creates Virtual Presence Speaker (VPS) using the front, center and surround speakers to produce stereoscopic sound fields even when no presence speakers are connected (p.57).
- Use “Ideal speaker layout” (diagram on the right) as reference. You do not need to exactly adjust the speaker layout to this diagram since the YPAO function of this unit will automatically optimize the speaker settings (distance, etc.) to suit the speaker layout.
- When using only one surround back speaker, place it straight behind the listening position (middle of “SBL” and “SBR” in the diagram).

## Basic speaker configuration

### ■ Placing speakers in your room

Depending on the number of speakers, place the speakers and subwoofer (with built-in amplifier) in your room. This section describes the representative speaker layout examples.

#### □ 9.2+2 channel system (using both surround back and rear presence speakers)

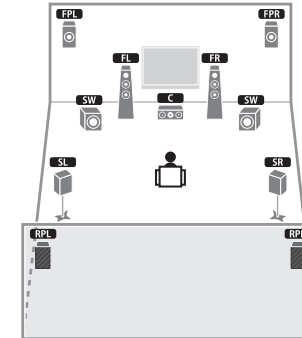


This speaker system brings out the full performance of this unit and allows you to enjoy a highly-natural stereoscopic sound field with any contents.



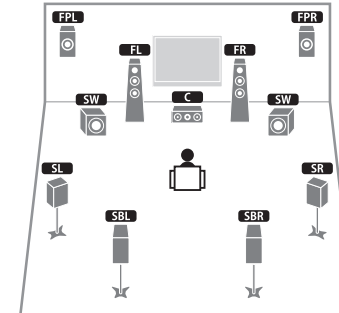
- The surround back speakers and rear presence speakers do not produce sounds simultaneously. This unit automatically switches the speakers to be used depending on a selected CINEMA DSP (p.55).

#### □ 9.2 channel system (using rear presence speakers)



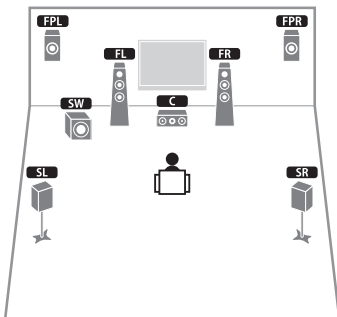
This speaker system uses the front and rear presence speakers to produce a highly-natural stereoscopic sound field, and is suited for enjoying 5.1-channel contents.

#### □ 9.2 channel system (using surround back speakers)



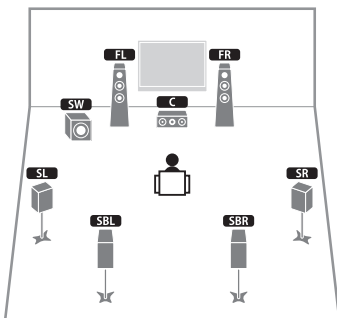
This speaker system uses the front presence speakers to produce a natural stereoscopic sound field, and also allows you to enjoy extended surround sounds using the surround back speakers.

□ 7.1 channel system (using front presence speakers)



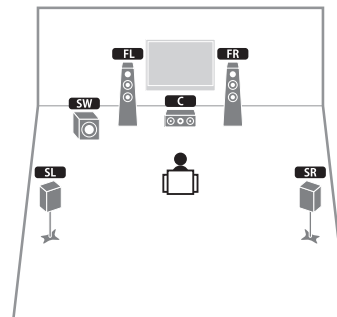
This speaker system uses the front presence speakers to produce a natural stereoscopic sound field, and is suited for enjoying 5.1-channel contents.

□ 7.1 channel system (using surround back speakers)



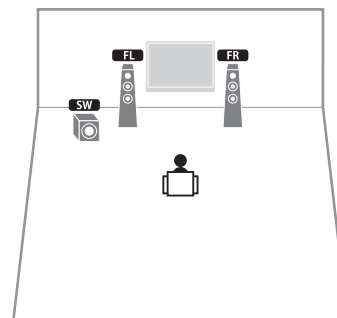
This speaker system creates Virtual Presence Speaker (VPS) using the front, center and surround speakers to produce a stereoscopic sound field, and also allows you to enjoy extended surround sounds using the surround back speakers.

□ 5.1 channel system



This speaker system creates Virtual Presence Speaker (VPS) using the front, center and surround speakers to produce a stereoscopic sound field, and is suited for enjoying 5.1-channel contents.

□ 2.1 channel system




Even when no surround speakers are connected, this unit creates the virtual surround speakers using the front speakers to allow you to enjoy multi-channel surround sound (Virtual CINEMA DSP).



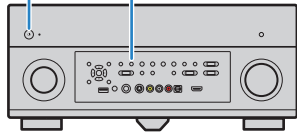
- Add the center speaker to configure a 3.1-channel system.

## ■ Setting the speaker impedance

This unit is configured for 8-ohm speakers at the factory. When connecting 6-ohm speakers, set the speaker impedance to “6 Ω MIN”. In this case, you can also use 4-ohm speakers as the front speakers.


- 1 Before connecting speakers, connect the supplied power cable to this unit and then to an AC wall outlet.**
- 2 While holding down STRAIGHT on the front panel, press MAIN ZONE .**

MAIN ZONE  STRAIGHT



- 3 Check that “SPEAKER IMP.” is displayed on the front display.**



- 4 Press STRAIGHT to select “6 Ω MIN”.**
- 5 Press MAIN ZONE  to set this unit to standby mode and remove the power cable from the AC wall outlet.**

Now you are ready to connect the speakers.

## Connecting speakers

Connect the speakers placed in your room to this unit.

### Caution

- Remove the power cable of this unit from an AC wall outlet and turn off the subwoofer before connecting the speakers.
- Be careful that the core of the speaker cable does not touch anything or come into contact with the metal areas of this unit. This may damage this unit or the speakers. If the speaker cables short circuit, "CHECK SP WIRES" will appear on the front display when this unit is turned on.

### Speakers to be connected

Room	Speaker type	Abbr.	Speaker system (the number of channels)					Power Amp Assign (p.109)
			9+2	9	7	5	2	
Main zone	Front (L)	FL	●	●	●	●	●	Basic (default)
	Front (R)	FR	●	●	●	●	●	
	Center	C	●	●	●	●		
	Surround (L)	SL	●	●	●	●		
	Surround (R)	SR	●	●	●	●		
	Surround back (L)	SBL	●	○*1	○*3			
	Surround back (R)	SBR	●	○*1	○*3			
	Front presence (L)	FPL	●	●	○*4			
	Front presence (R)	FPR	●	●	○*4			
	Rear presence (L)	RPL	●	○*2				
Rear presence (R)	RPR	●	○*2					

If you have 9 speakers, use two of them as surround back speakers (\*1) or rear presence speakers (\*2). If you have 7 speakers, use two of them as surround back speakers (\*3) or front presence speakers (\*4).



- You can also connect up to 2 subwoofers (with built-in amplifier) to this unit. When using 2 subwoofers, configure the "SWFR Layout" setting (p.111) in the "Setup" menu after connecting the power cable to an AC wall outlet.
- To use an external power amplifier (Hi-Fi amplifier, etc.) to enhance speaker output, see "Connecting an external power amplifier" (p.27).

### Cables necessary for connection (commercially available)

Speaker cables (x the number of speakers)

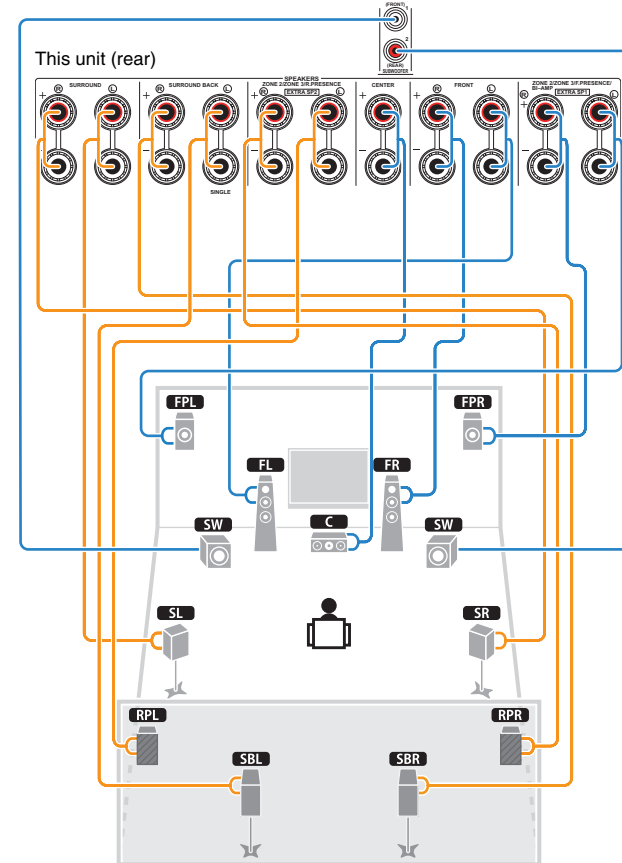


Audio pin cable (2 for connecting 2 subwoofers)



### Connection diagram

Refer to the following diagram and connect the speakers to this unit.

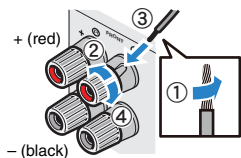


- When using only one surround back speaker, connect it to the SINGLE jack (L side).

### □ Connecting speaker cables

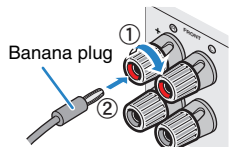
Speaker cables have two wires. One is for connecting the negative (-) terminal of the unit and the speaker, and the other is for the positive (+) terminal. If the wires are colored to prevent confusion, connect the black wire to the negative and the other wire to the positive.

- ① Remove approximately 10 mm (3/8") of insulation from the ends of the speaker cable, and twist the bare wires of the cable together firmly.
- ② Loosen the speaker terminal.
- ③ Insert the bare wires of the cable into the gap on the side (upper right or bottom left) of the terminal.
- ④ Tighten the terminal.



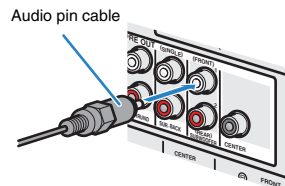
### Using a banana plug

- ① Tighten the speaker terminal.
- ② Insert a banana plug into the end of the terminal.



### □ Connecting the subwoofer

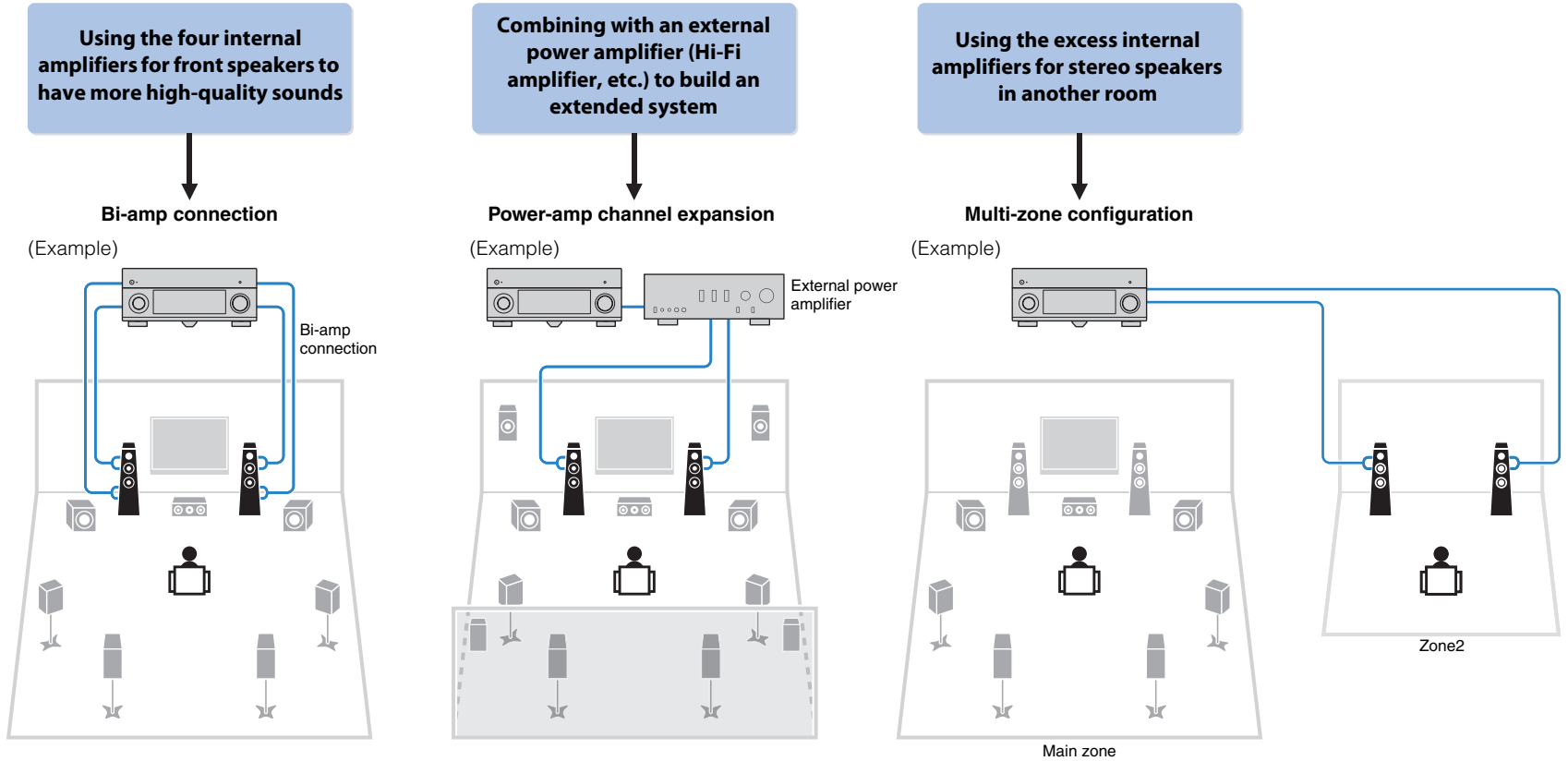
Use an audio pin cable to connect the subwoofer.





## Advanced speaker configuration

In addition to the basic speaker configuration (p. 16), this unit also allows you to apply the following speaker configurations to enhance your system.



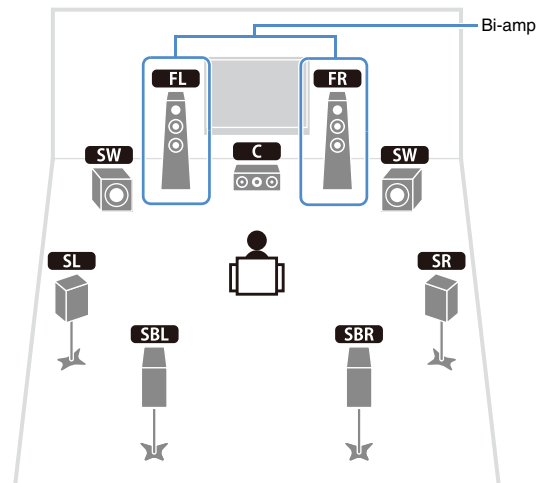
## Available speaker configurations

Main zone			Multi-zone	Power Amp Assign (p.109)	Page
Output channel (max)	Bi-amp	External power amplifier (required)			
7	○			7ch BI-AMP	22
9		Front	+1 room	7ch +FRONT+1ZONE	23
7		Front	+2 rooms	5ch +FRONT+2ZONE	23
7			+1 room	7ch +1ZONE	24
9			+1 room	9ch +1ZONE	24
7			+2 rooms	7ch +2ZONE	25



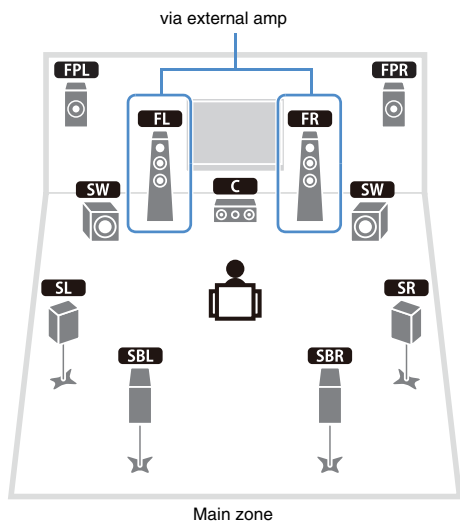
- When applying one of these configurations, you need to configure the "Power Amp Assign" setting (p.109) in the "Setup" menu.
- When applying a multi-zone configuration, you can select a zone (Zone2 or Zone3) to be assigned to the EXTRA SP1~2 jacks in "Power Amp Assign" (p.109) in the "Setup" menu. By default, Zone2 is assigned to the EXTRA SP1 jacks and Zone3 is assigned to the EXTRA SP2 jacks. The following explanation is based on the default zone assignments.

### 7ch BI-AMP

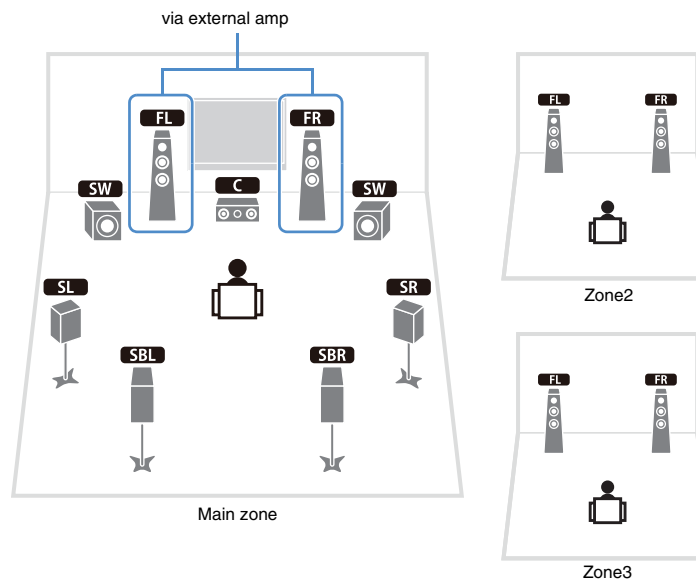


Speaker	Connect to
FL FR	FRONT and EXTRA SP1 (bi-amp connection)
C	CENTER
SL SR	SURROUND
SBL SBR	SURROUND BACK
FPL FPR	(not used)
RPL RPR	(not used)
SW	SUBWOOFER 1~2

7ch +FRONT+1ZONE



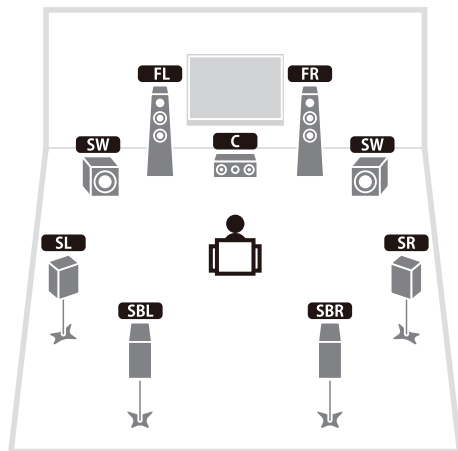
5ch +FRONT+2ZONE



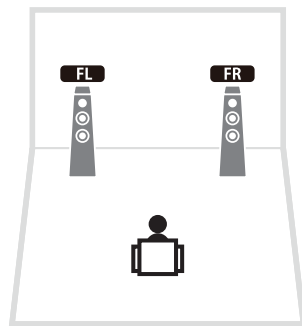
Speaker	Connect to
<b>FL</b> <b>FR</b>	FRONT (PRE OUT) via external power amplifier
<b>C</b>	CENTER
<b>SL</b> <b>SR</b>	SURROUND
<b>SBL</b> <b>SBR</b>	SURROUND BACK
<b>FPL</b> <b>FPR</b>	EXTRA SP1
<b>RPL</b> <b>RPR</b>	(not used)
<b>SW</b>	SUBWOOFER 1~2
Zone3 speakers	EXTRA SP2

Speaker	Connect to
<b>FL</b> <b>FR</b>	FRONT (PRE OUT) via external power amplifier
<b>C</b>	CENTER
<b>SL</b> <b>SR</b>	SURROUND
<b>SBL</b> <b>SBR</b>	SURROUND BACK
<b>FPL</b> <b>FPR</b>	(not used)
<b>RPL</b> <b>RPR</b>	(not used)
<b>SW</b>	SUBWOOFER 1~2
Zone2 speakers	EXTRA SP1
Zone3 speakers	EXTRA SP2

7ch +1ZONE

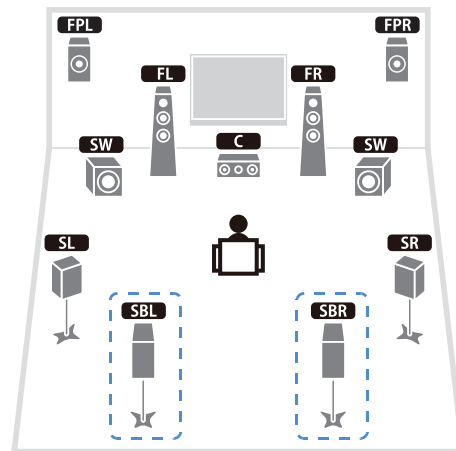


Main zone

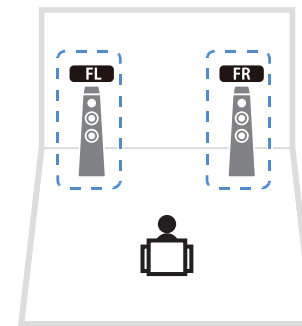


Zone2

9ch +1ZONE



Main zone



Zone3

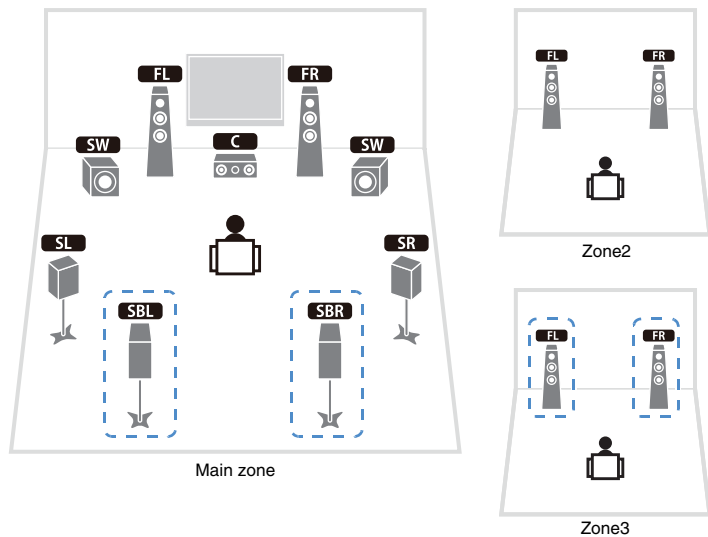
Speaker	Connect to
FL FR	FRONT
C	CENTER
SL SR	SURROUND
SBL SBR	SURROUND BACK
FPL FPR	(not used)
RPL RPR	(not used)
SW	SUBWOOFER 1~2
Zone2 speakers	EXTRA SP1

Speaker	Connect to
FL FR	FRONT
C	CENTER
SL SR	SURROUND
SBL SBR	SURROUND BACK
FPL FPR	EXTRA SP1
RPL RPR	(not used)
SW	SUBWOOFER 1~2
Zone3 speakers	EXTRA SP2



- When Zone3 output is enabled (p.89), the surround back speakers in the main zone do not output sound.

□ 7ch +2ZONE



Speaker	Connect to
FL FR	FRONT
C	CENTER
SL SR	SURROUND
SBL SBR	SURROUND BACK
FPL FPR	(not used)
RPL RPR	(not used)
SW	SUBWOOFER 1~2
Zone2 speakers	EXTRA SP1
Zone3 speakers	EXTRA SP2



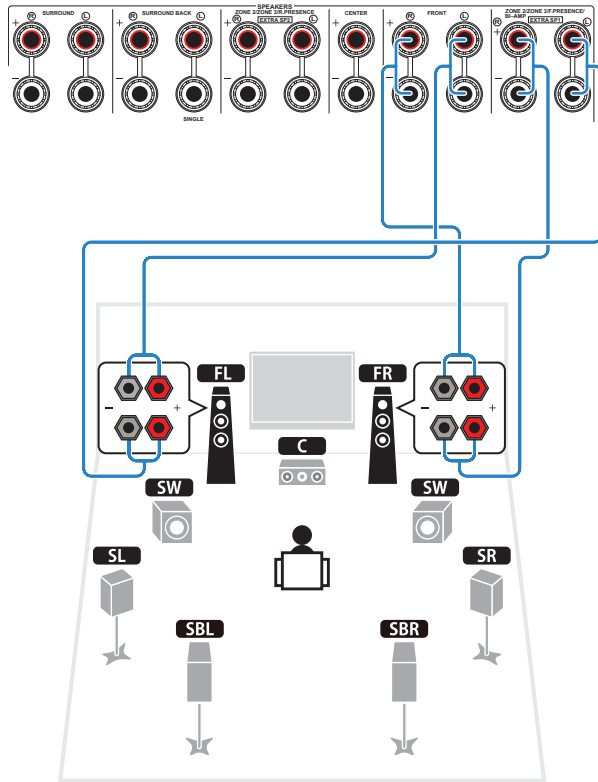
- When Zone3 output is enabled (p.89), the surround back speakers in the main zone do not output sound.

## ■ Connecting front speakers that support bi-amp connections

When using front speakers that support bi-amp connections, connect them to the FRONT jacks and EXTRA SP1 jacks.

To enable the bi-amp function, configure the “Power Amp Assign” setting (p.109) in the “Setup” menu after connecting the power cable to an AC wall outlet.

This unit (rear)

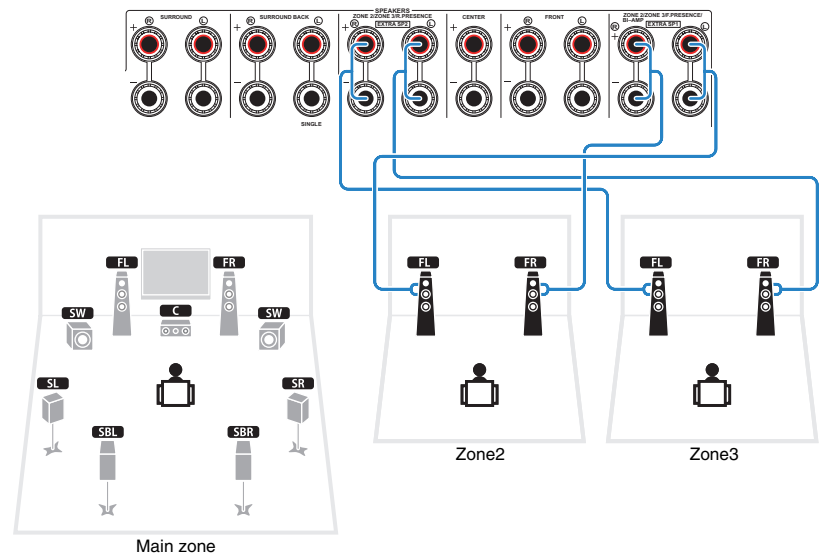


## ■ Connecting Zone2/3 speakers

When using Zone2/3 speakers, connect them to the EXTRA SP1~2 jacks.

To utilize the EXTRA SP1~2 jacks for Zone2/3 speakers, configure the “Power Amp Assign” setting (p.109) in the “Setup” menu after connecting the power cable to an AC wall outlet.

This unit (rear)



- You can select a zone (Zone2 or Zone3) to be assigned to the EXTRA SP1~2 jacks in “Power Amp Assign” (p.109) in the “Setup” menu. By default, Zone2 is assigned to the EXTRA SP1 jacks and Zone3 is assigned to the EXTRA SP2 jacks.
- You can also connect Zone2 and Zone3 speakers using an external amplifier (p.86).

### Caution

- Before making bi-amp connections, remove any brackets or cables that connect a woofer with a tweeter. Refer to the instruction manual of the speakers for details. When not making bi-amp connections, make sure that the brackets or cables are connected before connecting the speaker cables.

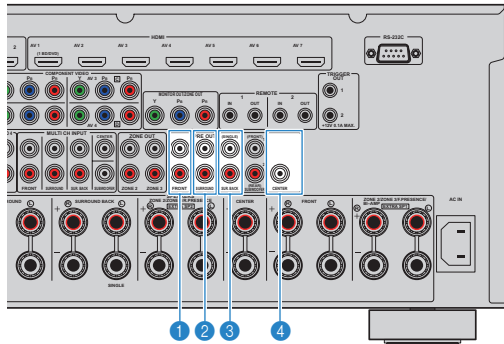
## ■ Connecting an external power amplifier

When using an external power amplifier to enhance speaker output, connect the input jacks of the power amplifier to the PRE OUT jacks of this unit. The same channel signals are output from the PRE OUT jacks as from their corresponding SPEAKERS terminals.

### Caution

- To prevent the generation of loud noises or abnormal sounds, make sure the followings before making connections.
  - Remove the power cable of this unit and turn off the external power amplifier before connecting them.
  - When using the PRE OUT jacks, do not connect speakers to the corresponding SPEAKERS terminals.
  - When using an external amplifier that does not have the volume control bypass, do not connect other devices (except this unit) to the amplifier.

This unit (rear)



### 1 FRONT jacks

Output front channel sounds.

### 2 SURROUND jacks

Output surround channel sounds.

### 3 SUR. BACK jacks

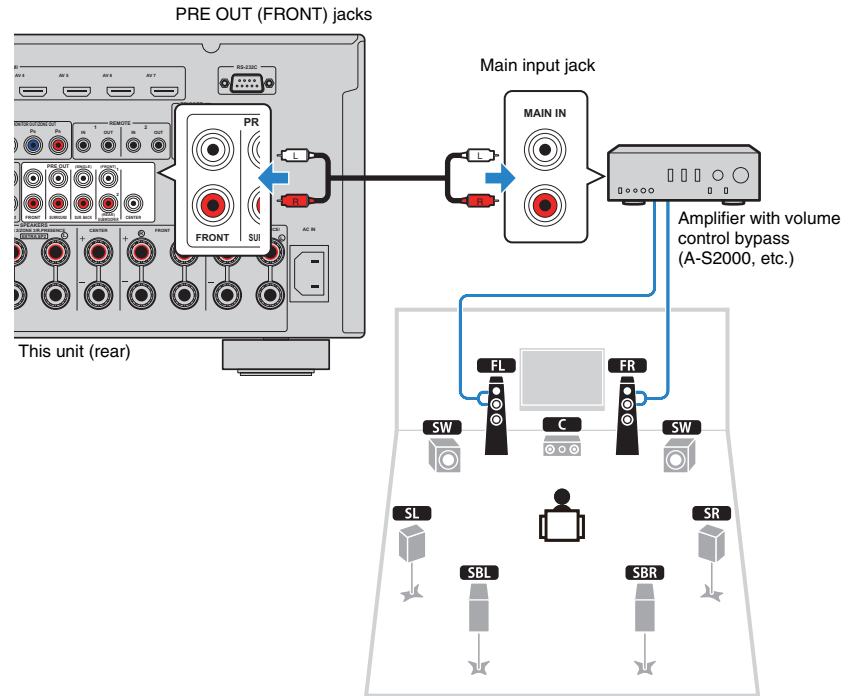
Output surround back channel sounds. When using only one external amplifier for the surround back channel, connect it to the SINGLE jack (L side).

### 4 CENTER jack

Outputs center channel sounds.

(Example)

Connecting front speakers via an external power amplifier



### About external power amplifiers

We recommend using power amplifiers that meet the following conditions.

- With unbalanced inputs
- With volume control bypass (or without volume control circuit)
- Output power: 100 W (8Ω) or more



- When using an external amplifier that does not have the volume control bypass, turn up the volume of the external amplifier enough and fix it.

# Input/output jacks and cables

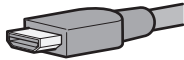
## Video/audio jacks

### HDMI jacks

Transmit digital video and digital sound through a single jack. Use an HDMI cable.



HDMI cable



- Use a 19-pin HDMI cable with the HDMI logo. We recommend using a cable less than 5.0 m (16.4 ft) long to prevent signal quality degradation.
- To connect a device that has a DVI jack, an HDMI/DVI-D cable is required.

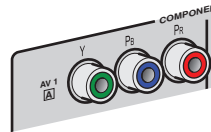


- The HDMI jacks of this unit support the HDMI Control, Audio Return Channel (ARC), and 3D video transmission (through output) features.

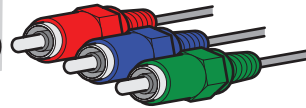
### Video jacks

#### COMPONENT VIDEO jacks

Transmit video signals separated into three components: luminance (Y), chrominance blue (PB), and chrominance red (PR). Use a component video cable with three plugs.



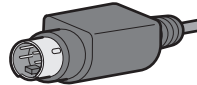
Component video cable



#### S VIDEO jack

Transmits S-video signals that include luminance (Y) and chrominance (C) components. Use an S-video cable.

S-video cable



#### VIDEO jacks

Transmit analog video signals. Use a video pin cable.



Video pin cable



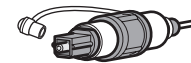
### Audio jacks

#### OPTICAL jacks

Transmit digital audio signals. Use a digital optical cable. Remove the tip protector (if available) before using the cable.



Digital Optical cable

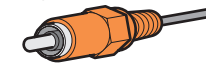


#### COAXIAL jacks

Transmit digital audio signals. Use a digital coaxial cable.



Digital coaxial cable

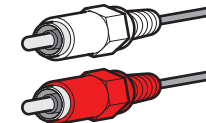


#### AUDIO jacks

Transmit analog stereo audio signals. Use a stereo pin cable.



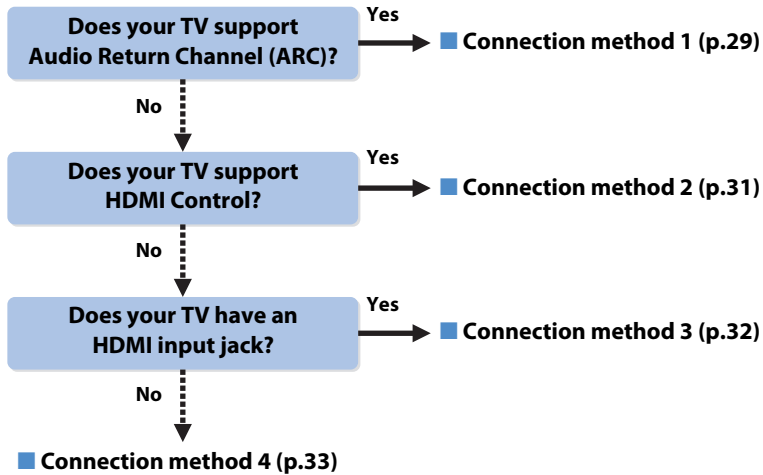
Stereo pin cable





## 2 Connecting a TV

Connect a TV to this unit so that videos input to this unit can be output to the TV. You can also enjoy playback of TV audio on this unit. The connection method varies depending on functions and video input jacks available on your TV. Refer to the instruction manual of the TV and choose a connection method.



### About HDMI Control

HDMI Control allows you to operate external devices via HDMI. If you connect a TV that supports HDMI Control to this unit with an HDMI cable, you can control this unit (power, volume, etc.) in conjunction with TV remote control operations. You can also control playback devices (HDMI Control-compatible BD/DVD player, etc.) connected to this unit with an HDMI cable. For details, see “HDMI Control” (p.150).

### About Audio Return Channel (ARC)

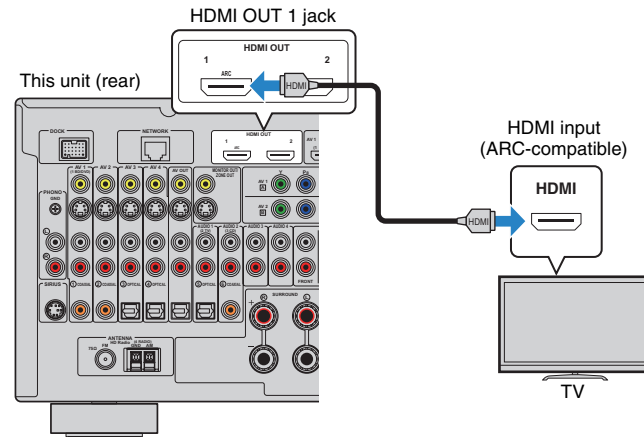
ARC allows audio signals to travel both ways under HDMI Control. So if you connect a TV that supports HDMI Control and ARC to this unit with a single HDMI cable, you can output video/audio to the TV or input TV audio to this unit.

### ■ Connection method 1 (HDMI Control/ARC-compatible TV)

Connect the TV to this unit with an HDMI cable.



- The following explanation is based on the assumption that you have not changed the “HDMI” parameters (p.116) in the “Setup” menu.
- HDMI Control is available only on the HDMI OUT 1 jack.



- If you make an HDMI connection between your TV and this unit, any videos input to this unit can be output to the TV no matter how you connect video devices to this unit. For details, see “Video signal flow” (p.149).
- You can connect another TV or a projector by using the HDMI OUT 2 jack (p.34).

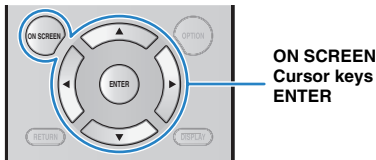
## □ Necessary settings

To use HDMI Control and ARC, you need to configure the following settings.  
For details on settings and operations of your TV, refer to the instruction manual of the TV.

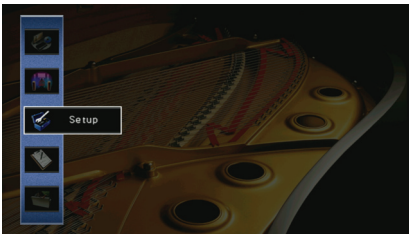
### 1 After connecting external devices (TV, playback devices, etc.) and power cable of this unit, turn on this unit, TV and playback devices.

### 2 Configure the settings of this unit.

- ① Check that ARC is enabled on the TV.
- ② Switch the TV input to display the video from this unit.
- ③ Press ON SCREEN.



- ④ Use the cursor keys to select “Setup” and press ENTER.



- ⑤ Use the cursor keys (</>) to select “HDMI”.



- ⑥ Use the cursor keys (Δ/▽) to select “HDMI Control” and press ENTER.
- ⑦ Use the cursor keys to select “On”.
- ⑧ Press ON SCREEN.

### 3 Configure the settings for HDMI Control.

- ① Enable HDMI Control on the TV and playback devices (HDMI Control-compatible BD/DVD player, etc).
- ② Turn off the main power of the TV and then turn off this unit and playback devices.
- ③ Turn on this unit and playback devices and then turn on the main power of the TV.
- ④ Switch the TV input to display the video from this unit.
- ⑤ Check the followings.

**On this unit:** The input to which the playback device is connected is selected. If not, select the input source manually.

**On the TV:** The video from the playback device is displayed.

- ⑥ Check that this unit is properly synchronized with the TV by turning off the TV or adjusting the TV volume with the TV remote control.

Now the necessary settings are complete.

If you select a TV program with the TV remote control, the input source of this unit will be automatically switched to “AUDIO1” and the TV audio will be played back on this unit.

If TV audio cannot be heard, check that “ARC” (p.116) in the “Setup” menu is set to “On”.



- If HDMI Control does not work properly, try turning off and on (or unplugging and re-plugging) the devices. It may solve the problem.
- If any audio interruption happens while using ARC, set “ARC” (p.116) in the “Setup” menu to “Off” and use an audio cable (digital optical or stereo pin cable) to input TV audio to this unit (p.31).



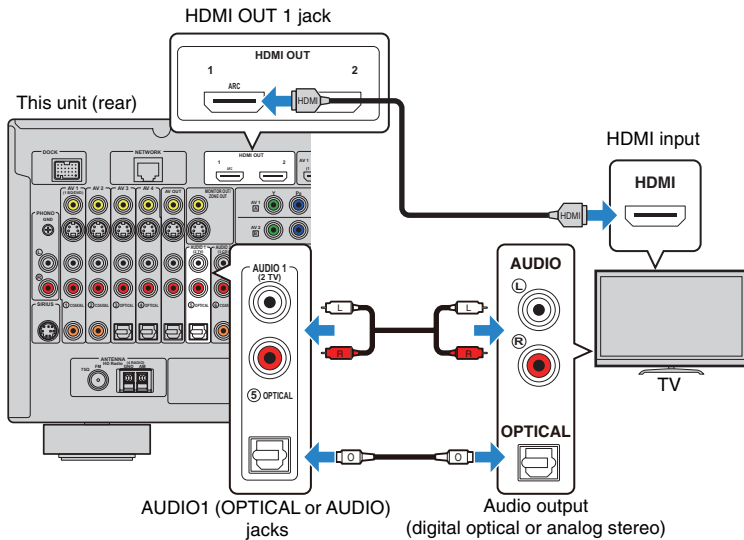
- “AUDIO1” is set as TV audio input at the factory. If you have connected any external device to the AUDIO1 jacks, use “TV Audio Input” (p.116) in the “Setup” menu to change the TV audio input assignment. To use the SCENE function (p.52), you also need to change the input assignment for SCENE(TV).

## ■ Connection method 2 (HDMI Control-compatible TV)

Connect the TV to this unit with an HDMI cable and an audio cable (digital optical or stereo pin cable).



- The following explanation is based on the assumption that you have not changed the “HDMI” parameters (p.116) in the “Setup” menu.
- HDMI Control is available only on the HDMI OUT 1 jack.



- If you make an HDMI connection between your TV and this unit, any videos input to this unit can be output to the TV no matter how you connect video devices to this unit. For details, see “Video signal flow” (p.149).
- You can connect another TV or a projector by using the HDMI OUT 2 jack (p.34).

## □ Necessary settings

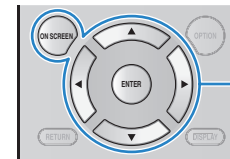
To use HDMI Control, you need to configure the following settings.

For details on settings and operations of your TV, refer to the instruction manual of the TV.

**1 After connecting external devices (TV, playback devices, etc.) and power cable of this unit, turn on this unit, TV and playback devices.**

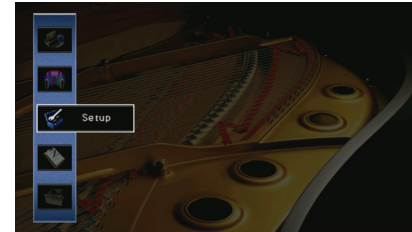
**2 Configure the settings of this unit.**

- ① Switch the TV input to display the video from this unit.
- ② Press ON SCREEN.



ON SCREEN  
Cursor keys  
ENTER

- ③ Use the cursor keys to select “Setup” and press ENTER.



- ④ Use the cursor keys (</>) to select “HDMI”.



- ⑤ Use the cursor keys (Δ/▽) to select “HDMI Control” and press ENTER.
- ⑥ Use the cursor keys to select “On”.
- ⑦ Press ON SCREEN.

### 3 Configure the settings for HDMI Control.

- ① Enable HDMI Control on the TV and playback devices (HDMI Control-compatible BD/DVD player, etc).
- ② Turn off the main power of the TV and then turn off this unit and playback devices.
- ③ Turn on this unit and playback devices and then turn on the main power of the TV.
- ④ Switch the TV input to display the video from this unit.
- ⑤ Check the followings.

**On this unit:** The input to which the playback device is connected is selected. If not, select the input source manually.

**On the TV:** The video from the playback device is displayed.

- ⑥ Check that this unit is properly synchronized with the TV by turning off the TV or adjusting the TV volume with the TV remote control.

Now the necessary settings are complete.

If you select a TV program with the TV remote control, the input source of this unit will be automatically switched to “AUDIO1” and the TV audio will be played back on this unit.



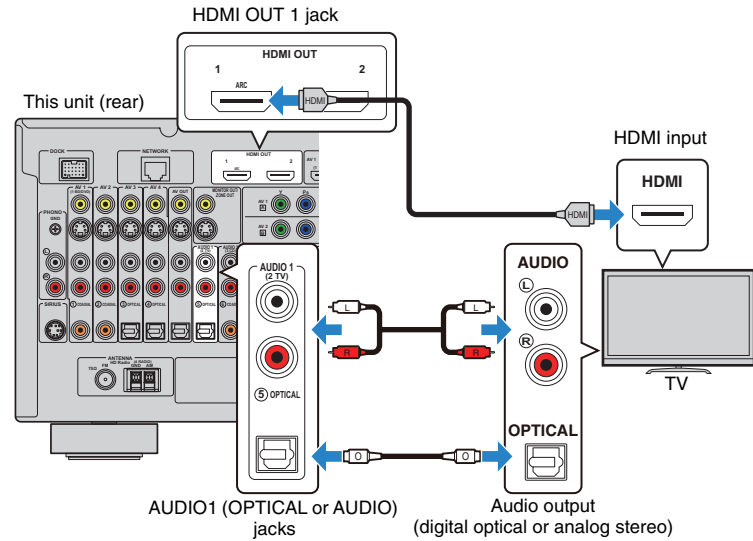
- If HDMI Control does not work properly, try turning off and on (or unplugging and re-plugging) the devices. It may solve the problem.



- “AUDIO1” is set as TV audio input at the factory. If you have connected any external device to the AUDIO1 jacks, use “TV Audio Input” (p.116) in the “Setup” menu to change the TV audio input assignment. To use the SCENE function (p.52), you also need to change the input assignment for SCENE(TV).

### ■ Connection method 3 (TV with HDMI input jacks)

Connect the TV to this unit with an HDMI cable and an audio cable (digital optical or stereo pin cable).



If switch the input source of this unit to “AUDIO1” by pressing AUDIO1 or SCENE(TV), the TV audio will be played back on this unit.



- If you make an HDMI connection between your TV and this unit, any videos input to this unit can be output to the TV no matter how you connect video devices to this unit. For details, see “Video signal flow” (p.149).
- You can connect another TV or a projector by using the HDMI OUT 2 jack (p.34).
- If you have connected any external device to the AUDIO1 jacks, connect the TV to one of the AUDIO2-4 jacks. To use the SCENE function (p.52), you also need to change the input assignment for SCENE(TV).

## ■ Connection method 4 (TV without HDMI input jacks)

Depending on the video input jacks available on your TV, choose one of the following connections.

If you select "AUDIO1" as the input source by pressing AUDIO1 or SCENE(TV), the TV audio will be played back on this unit.

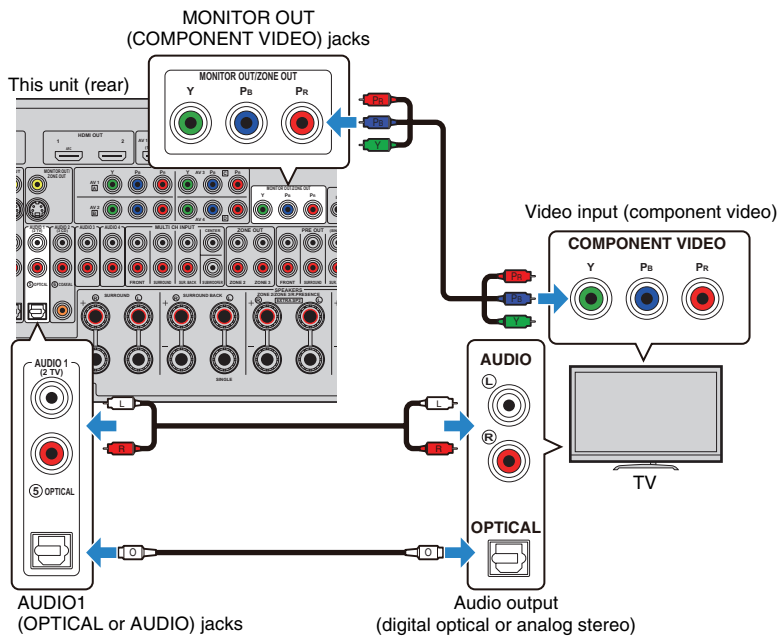


- If you connect your TV to this unit with a cable other than HDMI, videos input to this unit via HDMI cannot be output to the TV. Also, analog videos that can be output to the TV differ according to the "Analog to Analog Conversion" setting. For details, see "Video signal flow" (p.149).

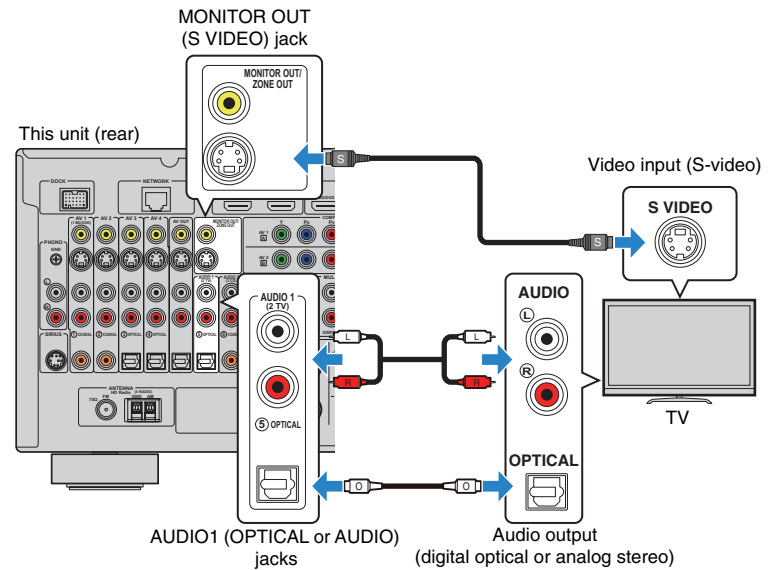


- If you have connected any external device to the AUDIO1 jacks, connect the TV to one of the AUDIO2-4 jacks. To use the SCENE function (p.52), you also need to change the input assignment for SCENE(TV).
- To use the MONITOR OUT jacks for the TV in the main zone, set "Monitor Out Assign" (p.119) in the "Setup" menu to "Main" (default).

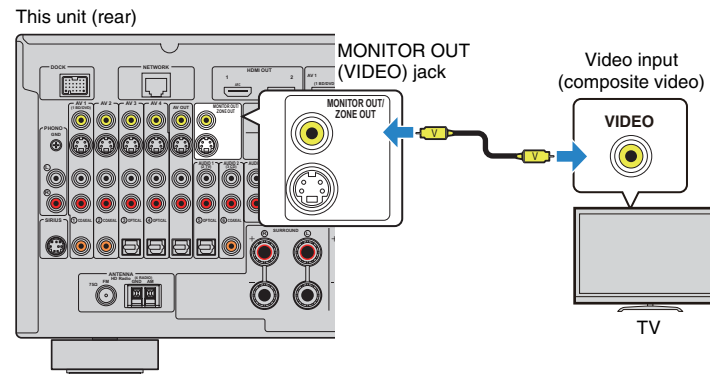
### COMPONENT VIDEO connection (with a component video cable)



### S VIDEO connection (with an S-video cable)

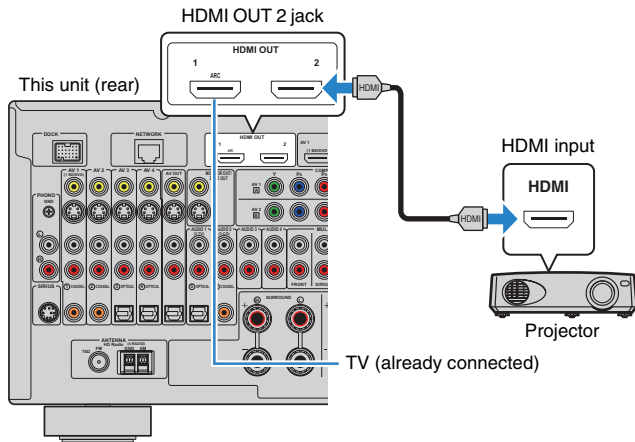


### VIDEO (composite video) connection (with a video pin cable)



## ■ Connecting another TV or a projector

This unit has 2 HDMI output jacks. If you connect another TV or a projector to this unit with an HDMI cable, you can switch the TVs (or projector) to be used for watching videos with the remote control (p.51).



- HDMI Control is not available on the HDMI OUT 2 jack.

### 3 Connecting playback devices

This unit is equipped with a variety of input jacks including HDMI input jacks to allow you to connect different types of playback devices. For information on how to connect an iPod, a Bluetooth component or a USB storage device, see the following pages.

- Connecting an iPod (p.70)
- Connecting a Bluetooth receiver (p.75)
- Connecting a USB storage device (p.77)

#### Connecting video devices (BD/DVD players, etc.)

Connect video devices such as BD/DVD players, set-top boxes (STBs) and game consoles to this unit. Depending on the video/audio output jacks available on your video device, choose one of the following connections. We recommend using an HDMI connection if the video device has an HDMI output jack.



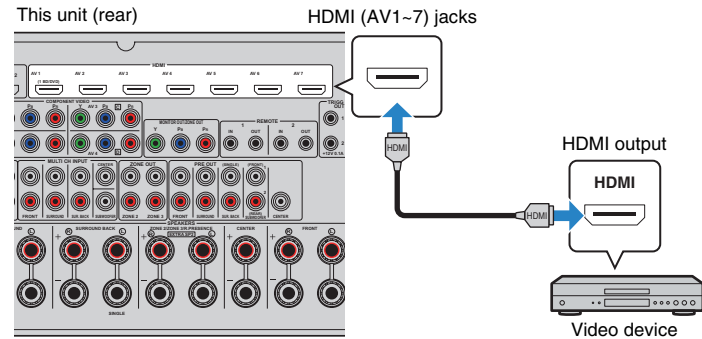
- Videos input to this unit via HDMI cannot be output to a TV connected to this unit with a cable other than HDMI.
- The following explanation is based on the assumption that you have not changed the "Input Assignment" setting (p.120) in the "Setup" menu. As necessary, you can assign the COMPONENT VIDEO (A, B, C, D), COAXIAL (1, 2, 6) and OPTICAL (3, 4, 5) jacks to another input source.



- If you make more than one audio connection for one input source, an audio signal played back on this unit will be determined according to the "Audio Select" setting (p.97) in the "Option" menu.

#### HDMI connection

Connect a video device to this unit with an HDMI cable.

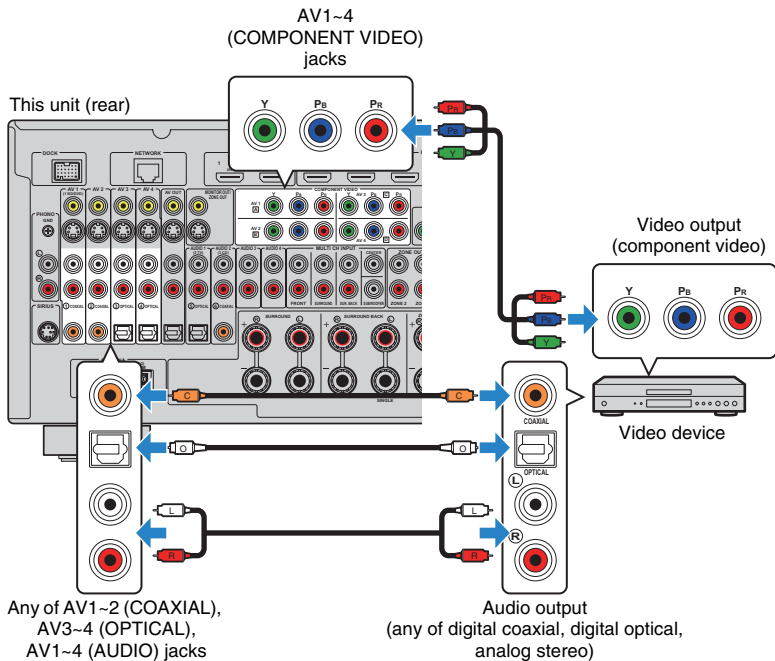


If you select the input source by pressing AV1~7, the video/audio played back on the video device will be output from this unit.

### ■ Component video connection

Connect a video device to this unit with a component video cable and an audio cable (digital coaxial, digital optical or stereo pin cable). Choose a set of input jacks (on this unit) depending on the audio output jacks available on your video device.

Output jacks on video device		Input jacks on this unit
Video	Audio	
Component video	Digital coaxial	AV1~2 (COMPONENT VIDEO + COAXIAL)
	Digital optical	AV3~4 (COMPONENT VIDEO + OPTICAL)
	Analog stereo	AV1~4 (COMPONENT VIDEO + AUDIO)

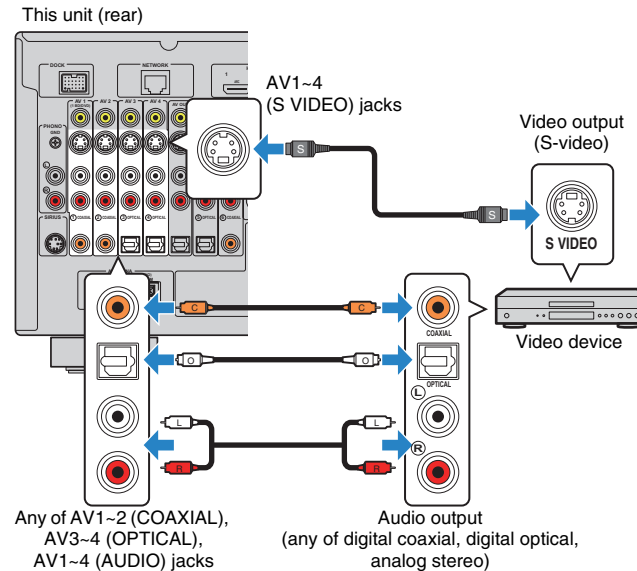


If you select the input source by pressing AV1~4, the video/audio played back on the video device will be output from this unit.

### ■ S-video connection

Connect a video device to this unit with an S-video cable and an audio cable (digital coaxial, digital optical or stereo pin cable). Choose a set of input jacks (on this unit) depending on the audio output jacks available on your video device.

Output jacks on video device		Input jacks on this unit
Video	Audio	
S-video	Digital coaxial	AV1~2 (S VIDEO + COAXIAL)
	Digital optical	AV3~4 (S VIDEO + OPTICAL)
	Analog stereo	AV1~4 (S VIDEO + AUDIO)



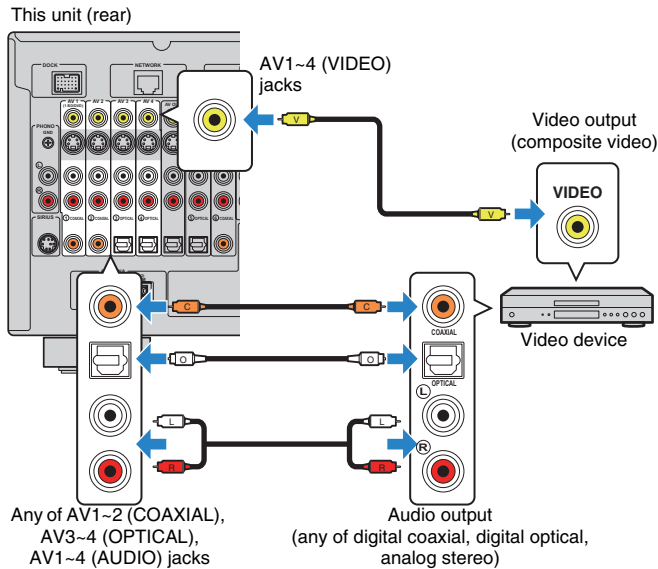
If you select the input source by pressing AV1~4, the video/audio played back on the video device will be output from this unit.



### ■ Composite video connection

Connect a video device to this unit with a video pin cable and an audio cable (digital coaxial, digital optical or stereo pin cable). Choose a set of input jacks (on this unit) depending on the audio output jacks available on your video device.

Output jacks on video device		Input jacks on this unit
Video	Audio	
Composite video	Digital coaxial	AV1~2 (VIDEO + COAXIAL)
	Digital optical	AV3~4 (VIDEO + OPTICAL)
	Analog stereo	AV1~4 (VIDEO + AUDIO)



If you select the input source by pressing AV1~4, the video/audio played back on the video device will be output from this unit.

### Connecting audio devices (CD players, etc.)

Connect audio devices such as CD players, MD players and a turntable to this unit. Depending on the audio output jacks available on your audio device, choose one of the following connections.

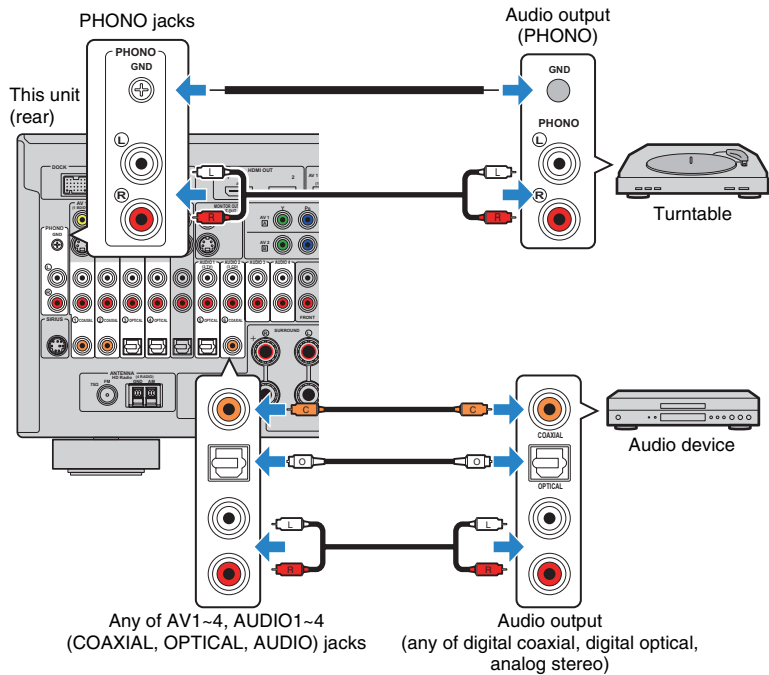


- The following explanation is based on the assumption that you have not changed the "Input Assignment" setting (p.120) in the "Setup" menu. As necessary, you can assign the COAXIAL (①, ②, ⑥) and OPTICAL (③, ④, ⑤) jacks to another input source.



- If you make more than one audio connection for one input source, an audio signal played back on this unit will be determined according to the "Audio Select" setting (p.97) in the "Option" menu.

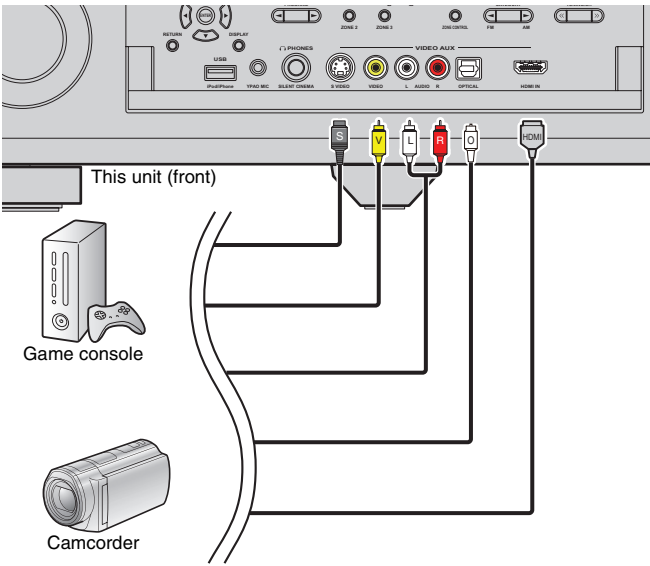
Audio output jacks on audio device	Audio input jacks on this unit
Digital coaxial	AV1~2 (COAXIAL) AUDIO2 (COAXIAL)
Digital optical	AV3~4 (OPTICAL) AUDIO1 (OPTICAL)
Analog stereo	AV1~4 (AUDIO) AUDIO1~4 (AUDIO)
Turntable (PHONO)	PHONO



If you select the input source by pressing AV1~4, AUDIO1~4 or PHONO, the audio played back on the audio device will be output from this unit.

### Connecting to the jacks on the front panel

Use the VIDEO AUX jacks on the front panel to temporarily connect devices such as a game console and a camcorder to this unit. Before making a connection, stop playback on the device and turn down the volume of this unit.



If you select "V-AUX" as the input source by pressing V-AUX, the video/audio played back on the device will be output from this unit.



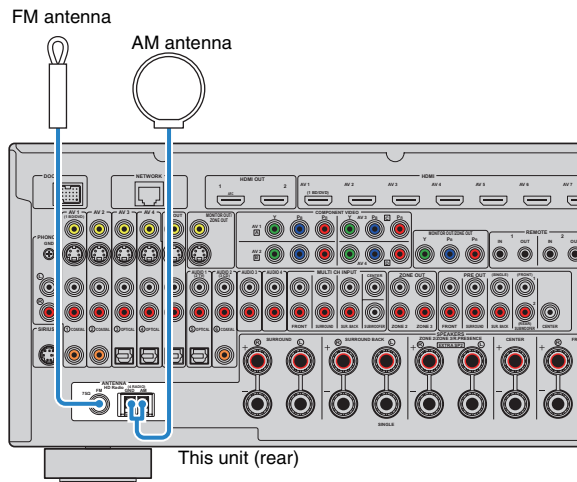
- If you connect video devices to both the HDMI IN jack and analog video/audio jacks, this unit outputs video/audio input through the HDMI IN jack.

## 4 Connecting the FM/AM antennas

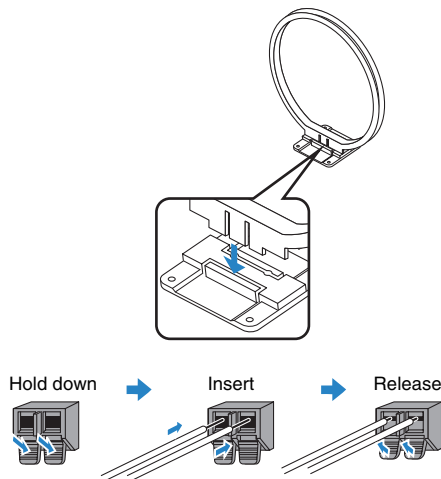
Connect the supplied FM/AM antennas to this unit.



- Unwind the antenna cable from the AM antenna unit only the length needed.
- The wires of the AM antenna have no polarity. You can connect either wire to the AM jack or GND jack. If you connect the GND jack to a commercially-available ground bar or copper plate with a vinyl-covered wire and bury this new attachment in moist ground, you can reduce noise. Do not connect the GND jack to the ground socket of an AC wall outlet.



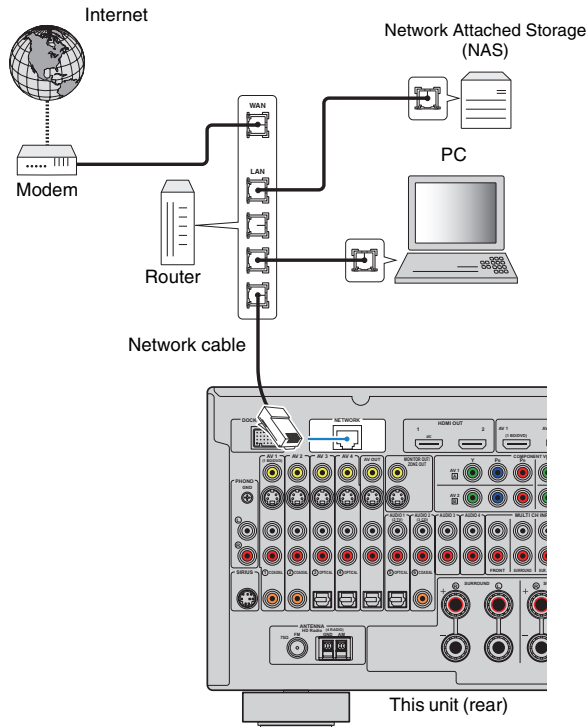
### Assembling and connecting the AM antenna



## 5 Connecting to the network

Connect this unit to your router with a commercially-available STP network cable (CAT-5 or higher straight cable).

You can enjoy Internet radio or music files stored on PCs and DLNA servers such as Network Attached Storage (NAS) on this unit.



- Some security software installed on your PC or the firewall settings of your network devices (such as a router) may block the access of this unit to the network devices or the Internet. In such cases, configure the security software or firewall settings appropriately.
- You can connect this unit to up to 16 music servers (PC, etc.), and each server must be connected to the same subnet as this unit.
- To use the service via the Internet, broadband connection is strongly recommended.



- When using a router that supports the DHCP function, the network parameters (IP address, etc.) will be automatically assigned to this unit without configuring the network settings of this unit. If your router does not support the DHCP function or you want to configure the network parameters manually, configure the network settings (p.117).
- You can check whether the network parameters (IP address, etc.) are properly assigned to this unit in "Network" (p.124) in the "Information".

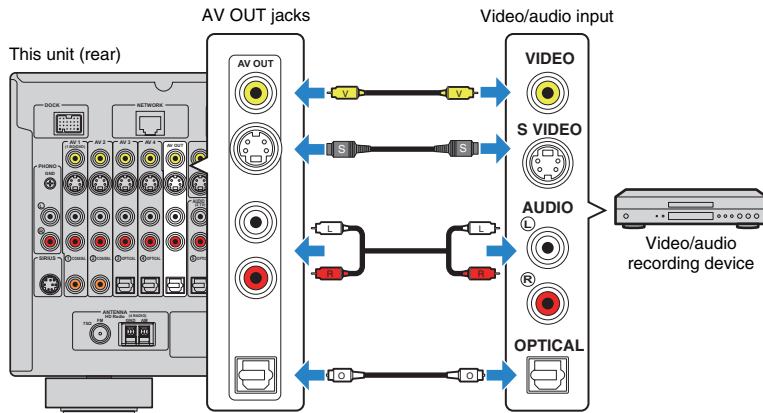
## 6 Connecting other devices

### Connecting video/audio recording devices

You can connect video/audio recording devices to the AV OUT jacks. These jacks output video/audio signals selected as the input.



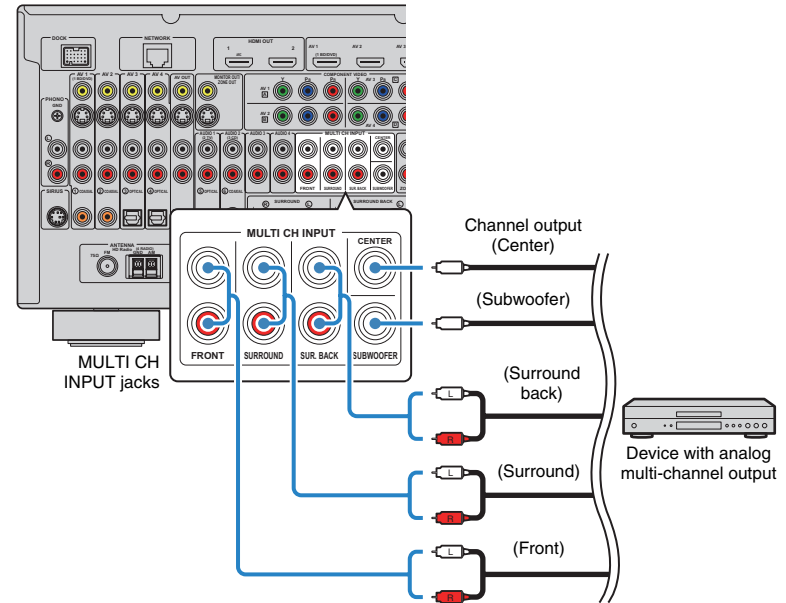
- The AV OUT jacks cannot output video/audio signals input through the HDMI or COMPONENT VIDEO jacks.



### Connecting a device with analog multi-channel output

You can connect an analog multi-channel output device such as a DVD player and an SACD player to the MULTI CH INPUT jacks.

This unit (rear)



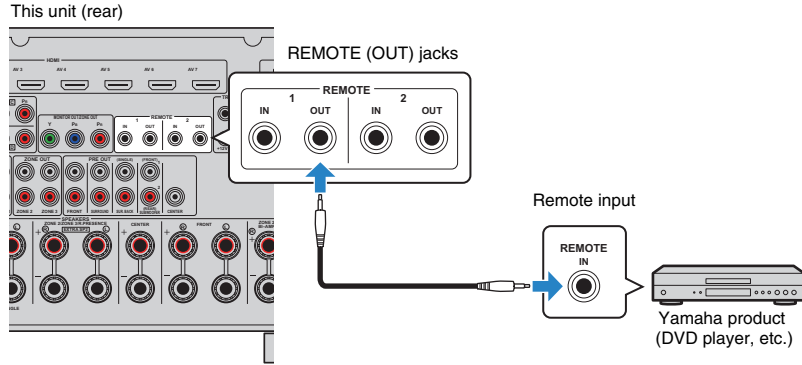
If you select "MULTI CH" as the input source by pressing MULTI, the audio played back on the device will be output from this unit.



- You can select a video source to be displayed when "MULTI CH" is selected as the input source using "Video Out" (p.100) in the "Input" menu. When connecting a video device (DVD player, etc.) to the MULTI CH INPUT jacks, use the input jack specified in "Video Out" for the video connection.
- Since this unit does not redirect signals input to the MULTI CH INPUT jacks to accommodate for missing speakers, make appropriate settings on the external device (DVD player, etc.) that suit to the speaker configuration.
- When "MULTI CH" is selected as the input source, sound mode selection and tone control adjustment are not available.

## Connecting a device compatible with SCENE link playback (remote connection)

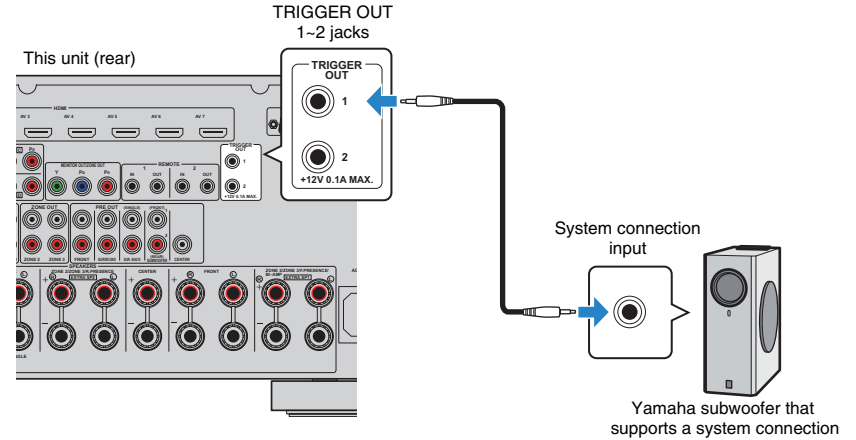
If you have a Yamaha product that has the capability of the SCENE control signal transmission, you can control the Yamaha product in conjunction with a scene selection (p.52) by connecting it to one of the REMOTE (OUT) jacks with a monaural mini-jack cable.



- If you connect a Yamaha product compatible with SCENE link playback to one of the REMOTE (OUT) jacks, you can start playback on the Yamaha product in conjunction with a scene selection (p.52). To enable the SCENE link playback, specify the device type in "Device Control" (p.101) in the "Scene" menu.
- You also connect an infrared signal receiver/emitter to operate devices in the main zone from Zone2 (p.88).

## Connecting a device compatible with the trigger function

The trigger function can control an external device in conjunction with operations (power-on/off, input selection, etc.) on this unit. If you have a Yamaha subwoofer that supports a system connection or a device with a trigger input jack, you can use the trigger function by connecting the external device to one of the TRIGGER OUT jacks.

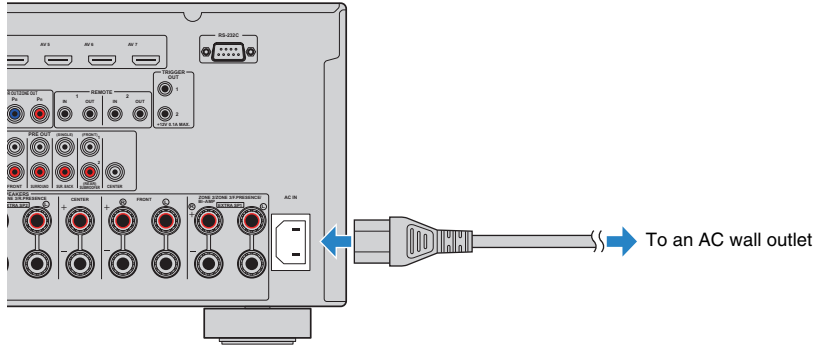


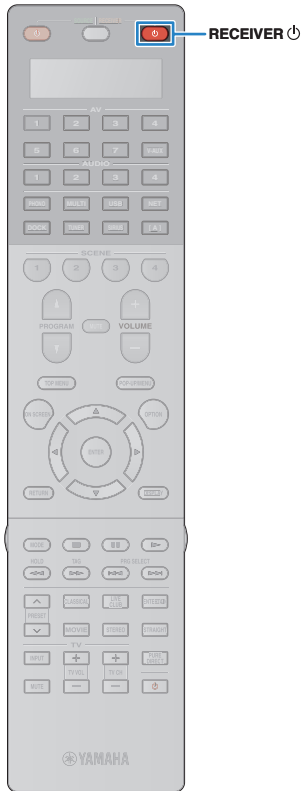
- You can configure the trigger function settings in "Trigger Output1" and "Trigger Output2" (p.121) in the "Setup" menu.

## 7 Connecting the power cable

After all the connections are complete, connect the supplied power cable to this unit and then to an AC wall outlet.

This unit (rear)






## 8 Optimizing the speaker settings automatically (YPAO)

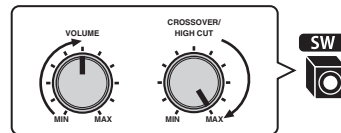
By using the Yamaha Parametric room Acoustic Optimizer (YPAO) function, this unit automatically detects speaker connections and distances from the listening position, and optimizes the speaker settings such as volume balance and acoustic parameters to suit your room.



Please note the following when using YPAO.

- Use YPAO after connecting a TV and speakers to this unit.
- During the measuring process, the test tones are output at high volume. Take care that the test tone does not frighten small children. Also, refrain from using this function at night when it may be a nuisance to others.
- During the measuring process, you cannot adjust the volume.
- During the measuring process, keep the room as quiet as possible.
- Do not connect headphones.
- If your subwoofer supports the auto-standby function, disable it.

- 1 Press RECEIVER  to turn on this unit.**
- 2 Turn on the TV and switch the TV input to display the video from this unit.**
- 3 Turned on the subwoofer and set the volume to half. If the cross-over frequency is adjustable, set it to maximum.**

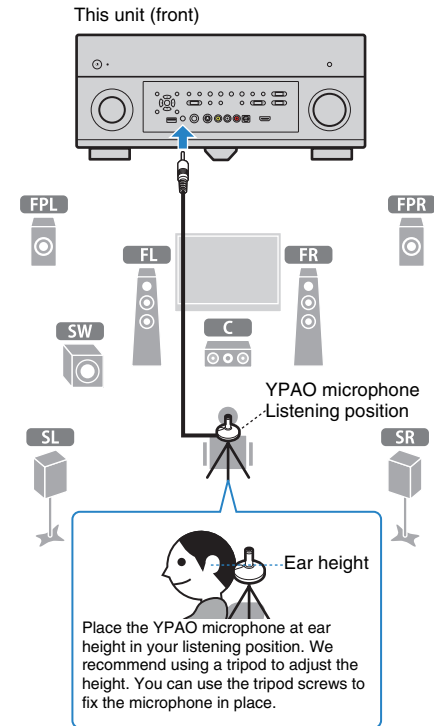


- 4 According to your speaker configuration, configure the “Power Amp Assign” setting (p.109) in the “Setup” menu.**

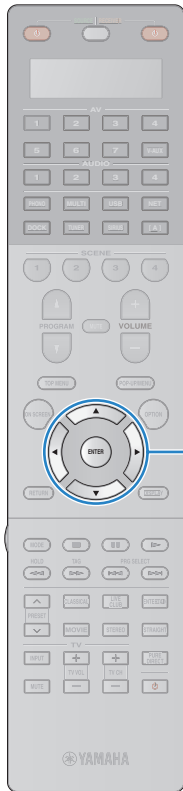
For the basic speaker configuration (p.16): set to “Basic” (default).

For any of the advanced speaker configurations (p.21): set to the appropriate setting.

- 5 Place the YPAO microphone at ear height in your listening position and connect it to the YPAO MIC jack on the front panel.**

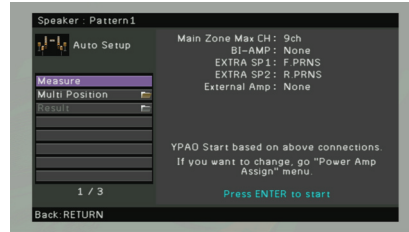






Cursor keys  
ENTER

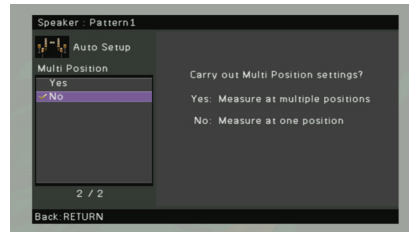
The following screen appears on the TV.



- To cancel the operation, disconnect the YPAO microphone before starting the measurement.

## 6 If desired, change the measuring method (multi/single).

- Use the cursor keys to select "Multi Position" and press ENTER.
- Use the cursor keys to select a setting and then press ENTER.



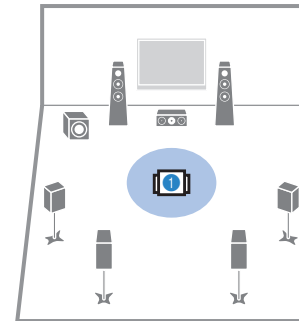
### Settings

Yes	Select this if your listening position is variable or you will enjoy surround sound with your company. You can perform the measurement at up to 8 positions to optimize the speaker settings to suit all of those positions (multi measure).
No (default)	Select this if your listening position is fixed in one position. You will perform the measurement only once to optimize the speaker settings suit to the position (single measure).

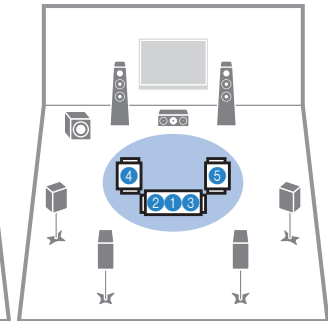


- If you perform the single measure, you will be able to enjoy surround sound at that position with optimized speaker settings. If you perform the multi measure, the speaker settings will be optimized for you to enjoy surround sound in a wider space.

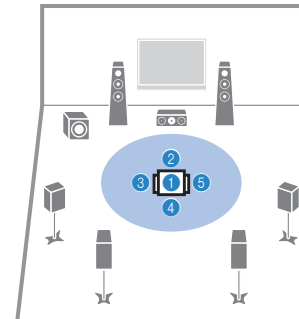
Single measure



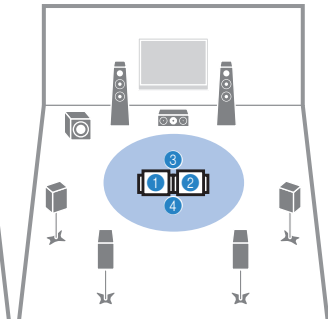
Multi measure  
(5 listening positions)



Multi measure  
(1 listening position + 4 circumferences)



Multi measure  
(2 listening positions + front/back)



Now all preparations are complete. See the following page to start the measurement.

### When "Multi Position" is set to "Yes":

"Measuring at multiple listening positions (multi measure)" (p.47)

### When "Multi Position" is set to "No":

"Measuring at one listening position (single measure)" (p.46)



Cursor keys  
ENTER  
RETURN

## Measuring at one listening position (single measure)

When “Multi Position” is set to “No”, follow the procedure below to make the measurement.



- YPAO measurement is not performed correctly when any obstacles are in the room.
- During the measuring process (about 3 minutes), keep stuff in the corners or remove it from the room.

### 1 To start the measurement, use the cursor keys to select “Measure” and press ENTER.

The measurement will start in 10 seconds. Press ENTER again to start the measurement immediately.



- To cancel the measurement, press RETURN.

The following screen appears on the TV when the measurement finishes.



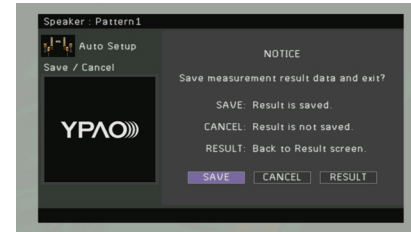
- If any error message (such as E-1) or warning message (such as W-1) appears, see “Error messages” (p.49) or “Warning messages” (p.50).



- To check the measurement results, select “Result”. For details, see “Checking the measurement results” (p.48).

### 2 Use the cursor keys to select “Save/Cancel” and press ENTER.

### 3 To save the measurement results, use the cursor keys to select “SAVE” and press ENTER.



The corrected speaker settings are applied.



- To finish the measurement without saving the result, select “CANCEL”.

### 4 Disconnect the YPAO microphone from this unit.

Now optimization of the speaker settings is complete.

#### Caution

- Since the YPAO microphone is sensitive to heat, do not place the microphone in any place where it will be subjected to direct sunlight or high temperatures (top of an AV equipment, etc).



Cursor keys  
ENTER  
RETURN

## Measuring at multiple listening positions (multi measure)

When “Multi Position” is set to “Yes”, follow the procedure below to make the measurement.



- YPAO measurement is not performed correctly when any obstacles are in the room.
- During the measuring process, keep stuff in the corners or remove it from the room. It takes about 10 minutes to make the measurement at 8 listening positions.
- If any error message (such as E-1) or warning message (such as W-1) appears, see “Error messages” (p.49) or “Warning messages” (p.50).

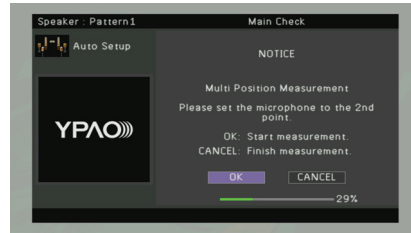
### 1 To start the measurement, use the cursor keys to select “Measure” and press ENTER.

The measurement will start in 10 seconds. Press ENTER again to start the measurement immediately.



- To cancel the measurement, press RETURN.

The following screen appears on the TV when the measurement at the first position finishes.

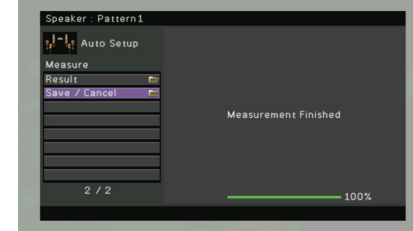


### 2 Move the YPAO microphone to the next listening position and press ENTER.

Repeat step 2 until the measurement at all listening positions (up to 8) are made.

### 3 If the measurement at all listening position are made, use the cursor keys to select “CANCEL” and press ENTER.

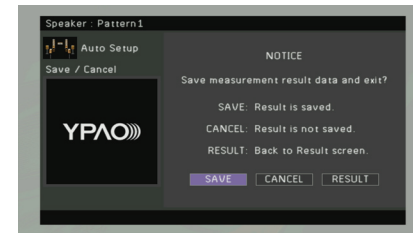
If you have made the measurement at 8 listening positions, the following screen appears automatically.



- To check the measurement results, select “Result”. For details, see “Checking the measurement results” (p.48).

### 4 Use the cursor keys to select “Save/Cancel” and press ENTER.

### 5 To save the measurement result, use the cursor keys to select “SAVE” and press ENTER.



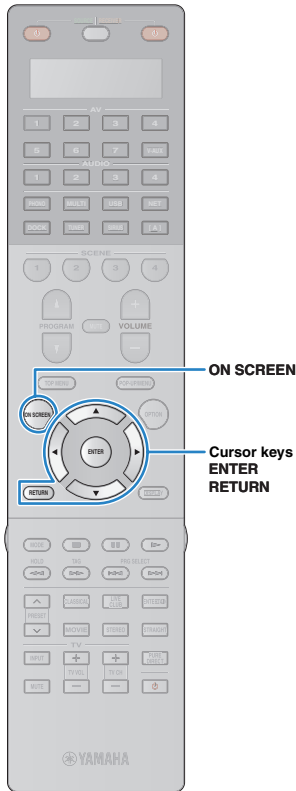
The corrected speaker settings are applied.



- To finish the measurement without saving the result, select “CANCEL”.

### 6 Disconnect the YPAO microphone from this unit.

Now optimization of the speaker settings is complete.



**Caution**

- Since the YPAO microphone is sensitive to heat, do not place the microphone in any place where it will be subjected to direct sunlight or high temperatures (top of an AV equipment, etc).

## Checking the measurement results

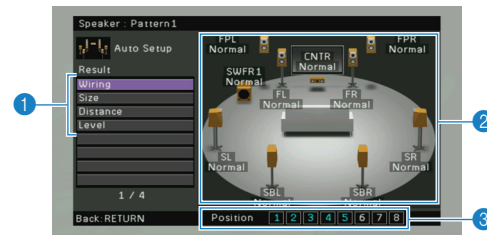
You can check the YPAO measurement results.

- 1 After the measurement, use the cursor keys to select “Result” and press ENTER.



- You can also select “Result” from “Auto Setup” (p.107) in the “Setup” menu. In this case, the previous measurement results are displayed.

The following screen appears.



- 1 Measurement result items
- 2 Measurement result details
- 3 The number of measured positions (when multi measure is performed)

- 2 Use the cursor keys to select an item

### Wiring

Polarity of each speaker  
**Normal:** The speaker cable is connected with the correct polarity (+/-).  
**Reverse:** The speaker cable may be connected with the reversed polarity (+/-).

<b>Size</b>	Size of each speaker (cross-over frequency of the subwoofer) <b>Large:</b> The speaker can reproduce low-frequency signals effectively. <b>Small:</b> The speaker cannot reproduce low-frequency signals effectively.
<b>Distance</b>	Distance from the listening position to each speaker
<b>Level</b>	Output level adjustment for each speaker



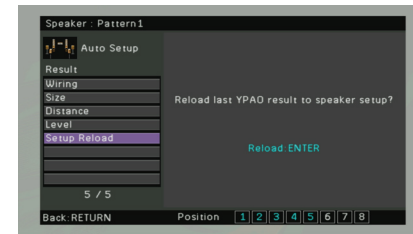
- A speaker with any problem is indicated with a red-boxed message.

- 3 To finish checking the results and return to the previous screen, press RETURN.

## Reloading the previous YPAO results

When the speaker settings you have configured manually are not suitable, follow the procedure below to discard the manual settings and reload the previous YPAO results.

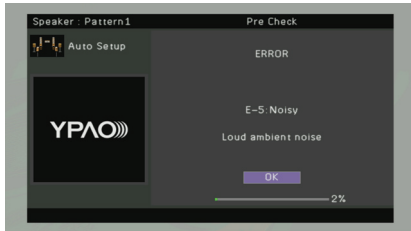
- 1 In the “Setup” menu, select “Speaker”, “Auto Setup” and then “Result” (p.106).
- 2 Use the cursor keys to select “Setup Reload” and press ENTER.



- 3 To exit from the menu, press ON SCREEN.

## Error messages

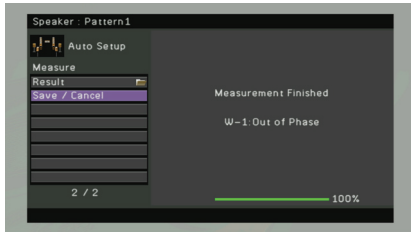
If any error message is displayed during the measurement, resolve the problem and perform YPAO again.



Error message	Cause	Remedy
<b>E-1: No Front SP</b>	Front speakers are not detected.	
<b>E-2: No Sur. SP</b>	Either of surround speakers is not detected.	Follow the on-screen instructions to exit YPAO, turn off this unit, and then check the speaker connections.
<b>E-3: No F.PRNS SP</b>	Either of front presence speakers is not detected.	
<b>E-4: SBR→SBL</b>	A surround back speaker is connected to the R side only.	When using only one surround back speaker, you need to connect it to the SINGLE jack (L side). Follow the on-screen instructions to exit YPAO, turn off this unit, and then reconnect the speaker.
<b>E-5: Noisy</b>	The noise is too loud.	Keep the room quiet and follow the on-screen instructions to start the measurement again. If you select "PROCEED", the measurement starts again on the condition this unit ignores the noisy error even if noises are detected.
<b>E-6: Check Sur.</b>	Any surround back speaker is connected while no surround speakers are connected.	Surround speakers should be connected when using surround back speakers. Follow the on-screen instructions to exit YPAO, turn off this unit, and then reconnect the speakers.
<b>E-7: No MIC</b>	The YPAO microphone has been removed.	Connect the YPAO microphone to the YPAO MIC jack firmly and follow the on-screen instructions to start the measurement again.
<b>E-8: No Signal</b>	The YPAO microphone cannot detect test tones.	Connect the YPAO microphone to the YPAO MIC jack firmly and follow the on-screen instructions to start the measurement again. If this error occurs repeatedly, contact the nearest authorized Yamaha dealer or service center.
<b>E-9: User Cancel</b>	The measurement has been canceled.	Follow the on-screen instructions to start the measurement again. To cancel the measurement, select "EXIT".
<b>E-10: Internal Error</b>	An internal error has occurred.	Follow the on-screen instructions to exit YPAO, turn off and on this unit. If this error occurs repeatedly, contact the nearest authorized Yamaha dealer or service center.
<b>E-11: No R.PRNS SP</b>	Either of rear presence speakers is not detected.	Follow the on-screen instructions to exit YPAO, turn off this unit, and then check the speaker connections.

## Warning messages

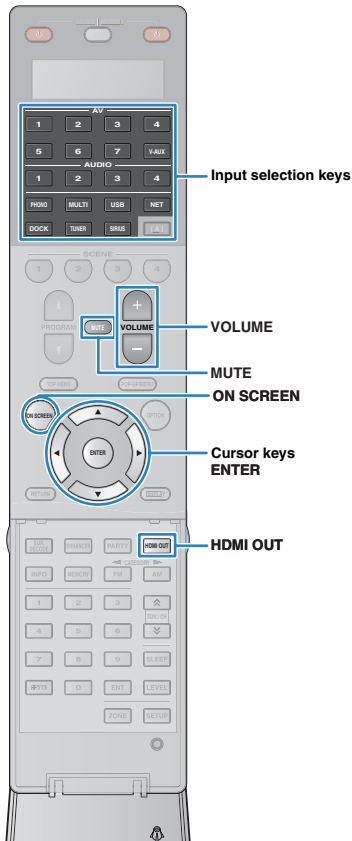
Even if any warning message is displayed after the measurement, you can save the measurement results by following on-screen instructions. However, we recommend you perform YPAO again to use this unit with the optimal speaker settings.



Warning message	Cause	Remedy
<b>W-1: Out of Phase</b>	Any of the speaker cables may be connected with the reversed polarity (+/-).	Select "Wiring" in "Result" (p.48) and check the cable connections (+/-) of the speaker indicated with "Reverse". If the speaker is connected incorrectly, turn off this unit and then reconnect the speaker cable. Depending on the type of speakers or room environment, this message may appear even if the speakers are connected correctly.
<b>W-2: Over Distance</b>	Any of the speakers is placed more than 24 m (80 ft) from the listening position.	Select "Distance" in "Result" (p.48) and move the speaker indicated with ">24.0m (>80.0ft)" within 24 m (80 ft) of the listening position.
<b>W-3: Level Error</b>	There are a significant volume differences between the speakers.	Check the use environment and cable connections (+/-) of each speaker, and the volume of the subwoofer. We recommend using the same speakers or speakers with as similar specifications as possible.

# PLAYBACK

## Basic playback procedure



- 1 Turn on external devices (TV, BD/DVD player, etc.) connected to this unit.
- 2 Use the input selection keys to select an input source.
- 3 Start playback on the external device, or select a radio station.  
Refer to the instruction manual of the external device.  
For details on the following operations, see the corresponding pages.
  - Listening to FM/AM radio (p.59)
  - Listening to SIRIUS Satellite Radio (p.64)
  - Playing back iPod music/videos (p.70)
  - Playing back music via Bluetooth (p.75)
  - Playing back music stored on a USB storage device (p.77)
  - Playing back music stored on PCs (p.80)
  - Listening to Internet radio (p.83)
- 4 Press **VOLUME** to adjust the volume.



- To mute the audio output, press MUTE. Press MUTE again to unmute.
- To adjust treble/bass parts of sound, use the "Option" menu or TONE/BALANCE on the front panel (p.96).

### On-screen input selection

- 1 Press ON SCREEN.
- 2 Use the cursor keys to select "Input" and press ENTER.
- 3 Use the cursor keys to select a desired input source and press ENTER.

## Selecting an HDMI output jack

- 1 Press **HDMI OUT** to select an HDMI OUT jack.

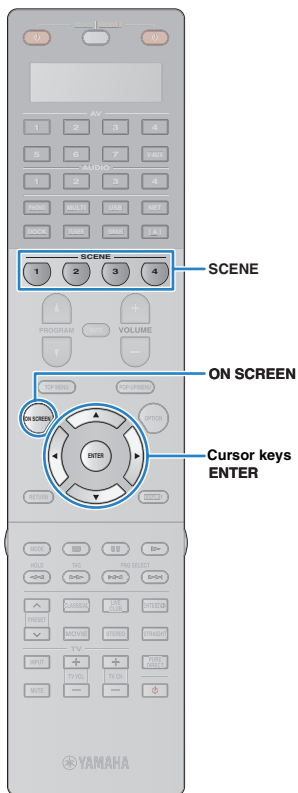
Each time you press the key, the HDMI OUT jack to be used for signal output switches.



<b>HDMI OUT 1+2</b>	Outputs the same signal at both the HDMI OUT 1 and HDMI OUT 2 jacks.
<b>HDMI OUT 1</b>	Outputs the signals at the selected HDMI OUT jack.
<b>HDMI OUT 2</b>	
<b>HDMI OUT Off</b>	Does not output the signals at the HDMI OUT jacks.



- You can also select an HDMI output jack by selecting a scene (p.52).
- When "HDMI OUT 1+2" is selected, this unit outputs video signals at the highest resolution that both TVs connected to this unit support. (For example, if you have connected a 1080p TV to the HDMI OUT 1 jack, and a 720p TV to the HDMI OUT 2 jack, this unit outputs 720p video signals.)



## Selecting the input source and favorite settings at once (SCENE)

The SCENE function allows you to select the assigned input source, sound program, HDMI output and various settings at once. You can use up to 12 scenes to register your favorite settings and switch them depending on a playback source.

### 1 Press SCENE.

The input source and settings registered to the corresponding scene are selected. This unit turns on automatically when it is in standby mode.

By default, the following settings are registered for each scene.

SCENE (SCENE key)		1 (BD/DVD)	2 (TV)	3 (CD)	4 (RADIO)
Input	Input (p.51)	AV1	AUDIO1	AUDIO2	TUNER
	Audio Select (p.97)	Auto	Auto	Auto	-
HDMI Output	HDMI Output (p.51)	OUT 1+2	OUT 1+2	OUT 1+2	OUT 1+2
Mode	Sound Program (p.54)	Drama	STRAIGHT	STRAIGHT	9ch Stereo
	Pure Direct Mode (p.113)	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto
Sound	Tone Control (p.96): SP (speakers), HP (headphones)	Treble/Bass: 0.0dB	Treble/Bass: 0.0dB	Treble/Bass: 0.0dB	Treble/Bass: 0.0dB
	Adaptive DRC (p.96)	Off	On	Off	Off
	Enhancer (p.58)	Off	On	Off	On



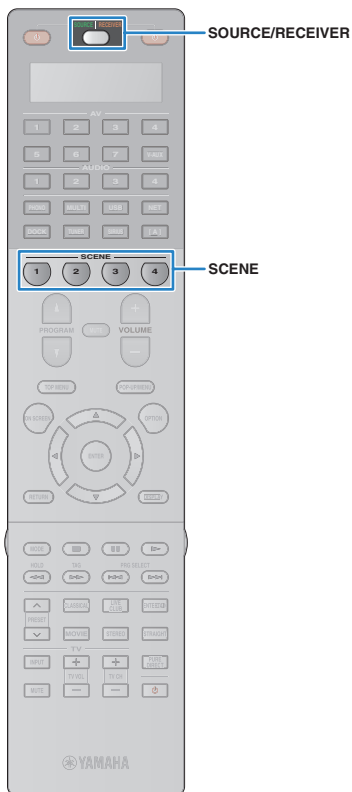
- You can select SCENE1~4 by pressing SCENE on the remote control. Additionally, you can create 8 scenes (SCENE5~12) and select those scenes from the "Scene" menu (p.100).
- You can also include other setting items (surround settings, video settings, etc.) as the scene assignments (p.102).



#### On-screen scene selection

- Press ON SCREEN.
- Use the cursor keys to select "Scene" and press ENTER.
- Use the cursor keys to select a desired scene and press ENTER.





## Configuring scene assignments

Follow the procedure below to register the current status (input source, sound program, etc.) to a scene. As necessary, you can select items to be included as the scene assignments (p.102).

**1 Set this unit to the condition (input source, sound program, etc.) that you want to assign to a scene.**

**2 Hold down the desired SCENE key until “SET Complete” appears on the front display.**

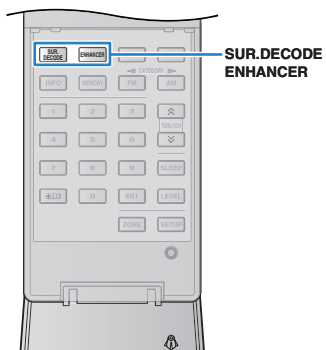
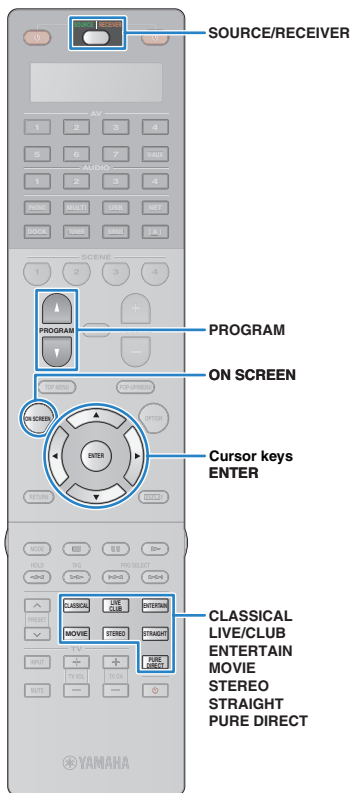


**3 If you want to control the corresponding playback device after selecting the scene, hold down the corresponding SCENE key and input selection key together for more than 3 seconds.**

Once the setting is completed successfully, SOURCE/RECEIVER blinks twice.



- If you have not registered the remote control code of the playback device yet, see “Setting the remote control codes for playback devices” (p.129) to register it.
- You can start playback of external devices connected to this unit via HDMI or a Yamaha product connected to the REMOTE OUT jack, in conjunction with a scene selection (SCENE link playback). To enable the SCENE link playback, specify the device type in “Device Control” (p.101) in the “Scene” menu.



## Selecting the sound mode

This unit is equipped with a variety of sound programs and surround decoders that allow you to enjoy playback sources with a favorite sound mode (sound field effect, stereo playback, etc).

### Selecting a sound program suitable for movies

- MOVIE THEATER category (p.55):  
Press MOVIE repeatedly.
- ENTERTAINMENT category (p.55):  
Press ENTERTAIN repeatedly.

### Selecting a sound program suitable for music or stereo playback

- CLASSICAL category (p.56):  
Press CLASSICAL repeatedly.
- LIVE/CLUB category (p.56):  
Press LIVE/CLUB repeatedly.
- STEREO category (p.56):  
Press STEREO repeatedly.

### Selecting a surround decoder (p.57)

Press SUR.DECODE repeatedly.

### Switching to the straight decode mode (p.57)

Press STRAIGHT.

### Switching to the Pure Direct mode (p.58)

Press PURE DIRECT.

### Enable Compressed Music Enhancer (p.58)

Press ENHANCER.



- You can also select a sound program or the surround decoder by pressing PROGRAM.



### On-screen sound program/surround decoder selection

- ① Press ON SCREEN.
- ② Use the cursor keys to select "Sound Program" and press ENTER.
- ③ Use the cursor keys to select a sound program/surround decoder and press ENTER.



- You can change the settings of the surround programs and surround decoders in the "Sound Program" menu (p.103).
- The sound mode can be applied separately to each input source.
- You can check which speakers are currently outputting sound with the speaker indicators on the front panel (p.10) or the "Audio Signal" screen in the "Information" menu (p.123).

## Enjoying sound field effects (CINEMA DSP)

### CINEMA DSP

This unit is equipped with a variety of sound programs that utilize Yamaha's original DSP technology (CINEMA DSP). It allows you to easily create sound fields like actual movie theaters or concert halls in your room.

Sound program category



"CINEMA DSP" lights up      Sound program

### ■ Sound programs suitable for movies (MOVIE)

The following sound programs are optimized for viewing video sources such as movies, TV programs and games.

#### MOVIE THEATER

<b>Standard</b>	This program creates a sound field emphasizing the surround feeling without disturbing the original acoustic positioning of multi-channel audio such as Dolby Digital and DTS. It has been designed with the concept of an ideal movie theater, in which the audience is surrounded by beautiful reverberations from the left, right and rear.
<b>Spectacle</b>	This program represents the spectacular feeling of large-scale movie productions. It reproduces a broad theater sound field that matches cinemascope and wider-screen movies with an excellent dynamic range providing everything from very small sound effects to large, impressive sounds.
<b>Sci-Fi</b>	This program clearly reproduces the finely elaborated sound design of the latest science fiction and special effects-featuring movies. You can enjoy a variety of cinematographically created virtual spaces reproduced with clear separation between dialog, sound effects and background music.
<b>Adventure</b>	This program is ideal for precisely reproducing the sound design of action and adventure movies. The sound field restrains reverberations but puts emphasis on reproducing a powerful space expanded widely to the left and right. The reproduced depth is also restrained relatively to ensure the separation between audio channels and the clarity of the sound.
<b>Drama</b>	This program features stable reverberations that match a wide range of movie genres from serious dramas to musicals and comedies. The reverberations are modest but offer an optimum 3D feeling, reproducing effects tones and background music softly but cubically around clear words and center positioning in a way that does not fatigue the listener even after long hours of viewing.

#### **Mono Movie**

This program is provided for reproducing monaural video sources such as a classic movie in an atmosphere of a good old movie theater. The program produces the optimum expansion and reverberation to the original audio to create a comfortable space with a certain sound depth.

#### ENTERTAINMENT

#### **Sports**

This program allows the listeners to enjoy stereo sport broadcasts and studio variety programs with enriched live feeling. In sports broadcasts, the voices of the commentator and sportscaster are positioned clearly at the center while the atmosphere of the stadium expands in an optimal space to offer the listeners a feeling of presence in the stadium.

#### **Action Game**

This program is suitable for action games such as car racing, fighting games and FPS games. The reality of, and emphasis on, various effects makes the player feel like they are right in the middle of the action, allowing for greater concentration. Use this program in combination with Compressed Music Enhancer for a more dynamic and strong sound field.

#### **Roleplaying Game**

This program is suitable for role-playing and adventure games. This program adds depth to the sound field for natural and realistic reproduction of background music, special effects and dialog from a wide variety of scenes. Use this program in combination with Compressed Music Enhancer for a more clear and spatial sound field.

#### **Music Video**

This program offers an image of a concert hall for live performance of pop, rock and jazz music. The listener can indulge oneself in a hot live space thanks to the presence sound field that emphasizes the vividness of vocals and solo play and the beat of rhythm instruments, and to the surround sound field that reproduces the space of a big live hall.

#### **Recital/Opera**

This program controls the amount of reverberations at an optimum level and emphasizes the depth and clarity of human voices to offer the reverberations of an orchestra box in front the listener at the same time as providing the acoustic positioning and feeling of presence on the stage. The surround sound field is relatively moderate, but the data for concert hall effects are used to represent the inherent beauty of music. The listener will not be fatigued even after long hours of opera entertainment.

## ■ Sound programs suitable for music/stereo playback (MUSIC)

The following sound programs are optimized for listening to music sources. You can also select stereo playback.

### □ CLASSICAL

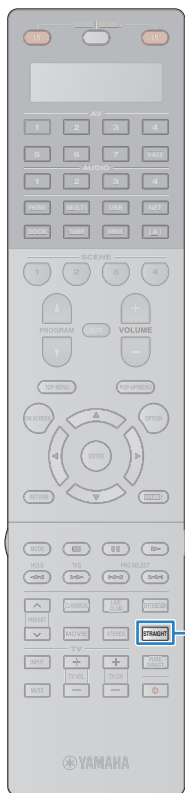
<b>Hall in Munich</b>	This program simulates a concert hall with approximately 2500 seats in Munich, using stylish wood for the interior finishing as normal standards for European concert halls. Fine, beautiful reverberations spread richly, creating a calming atmosphere. The listener's virtual seat is at the center left of the arena.
<b>Hall in Vienna</b>	This program simulates an approximately 1700-seat, middle-sized concert hall with a shoebox shape that is traditional in Vienna. Pillars and ornate carvings create extremely complex reflections from all around the audience, producing a very full, rich sound.
<b>Hall in Amsterdam</b>	The large, shoe box shaped hall seats about 2200 around the circle stage. Reflections are rich and pleasing while the sound travels freely.
<b>Church in Freiburg</b>	Located in the south of Germany, this grand, stone-built church has a pointed tower at 120 meters in height. Its long and narrow shape and the high ceiling enable the elongated reverberation time and limited initial reflection time. Thus, the rich reverberation rather than the sound itself reproduces the atmosphere of the church.
<b>Church in Royaumont</b>	This program features the sound field created by the refectory (dining hall) of a beautiful medieval Gothic monastery located in Royaumont on the outskirts of Paris.
<b>Chamber</b>	This program creates a relatively wide space with a high ceiling like an audience hall in a palace. It offers pleasant reverberations that are suitable for courtly music and chamber music.

### □ LIVE/CLUB

<b>Village Vanguard</b>	The Jazz club is on 7th Avenue, New York. This small club with the low ceiling makes the powerful reflections converge toward the stage located in the center.
<b>Warehouse Loft</b>	The warehouse resembles some lofts in Soho. Sound reflects off the concrete walls clearly with a lot of energy.
<b>Cellar Club</b>	This program simulates a live house with a low ceiling and homey atmosphere. A realistic, live sound field features powerful sound as if the listener is in a row in front of a small stage.
<b>The Roxy Theatre</b>	This program creates the sound field of a rock music live house in Los Angeles, with approximately 460 seats. The listener's virtual seat is at the center left of the hall.
<b>The Bottom Line</b>	This program creates the sound field at stage front in The Bottom Line, a famous New York jazz club once. The floor can seat 300 people to the left and right in a sound field offering real and vibrant sound.

### □ STEREO

<b>2ch Stereo</b>	Use this program to mix down multi-channel sources to 2 channels. When multi-channel signals are input, they are down mixed to 2 channels and output from the front speakers (this program does not utilize CINEMA DSP).
<b>9ch Stereo</b>	Use this program to output sound from all speakers. When you playback multi-channel sources, this unit down-mixes the source to 2 channels, and then outputs the sound from all speakers. This program creates a larger sound field and is ideal for background music at parties, etc.



## ■ Enjoying stereoscopic sound fields (CINEMA DSP 3D)



CINEMA DSP 3D enables to create a natural stereoscopic sound field in your room.

CINEMA DSP 3D functions when both of the following conditions are met.

- One of the sound programs (except 2ch Stereo and 9ch Stereo) is selected (p.55).
- "CINEMA DSP 3D Mode" (p.96) in the "Option" menu is set to "On" (default).



"CINEMA DSP 3D" lights up



- We recommend using front presence speakers to have a full effect of the stereoscopic sound fields (and rear presence speakers for further spatial sounds). However, this unit creates Virtual Presence Speaker (VPS) using the front, center and surround speakers to produce stereoscopic sound fields even when no front presence speakers are connected.

## ■ Enjoying sound field effects without surround speakers (Virtual CINEMA DSP)

If you select one of the sound programs (except 2ch Stereo and 9ch Stereo) when no surround speakers are connected, this unit automatically creates the surround sound field using the front-side speakers.

## Enjoying unprocessed playback

You can play back input sources without any sound field effect processing.

### ■ Enjoying unprocessed sounds in original channels (straight decode)

When the straight decode mode is enabled, each speaker produces each channel audio signal directly (without sound field processing). When you play back 2-channel sources such as CD, stereo sound is heard from the front speakers. When you play back multi-channel sources, this unit produces unprocessed multi-channel sounds.

#### 1 Press STRAIGHT.

Each time you press the key, the straight decode mode is enabled or disabled.



### ■ Enjoying unprocessed multi-channel sounds (surround decoder)

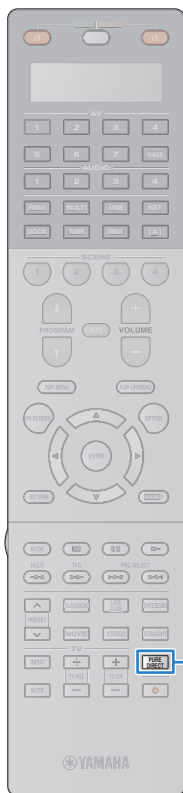
The surround decoder enables unprocessed multi-channel playback from 2-channel sources. When a multi-channel source is input, it works the same way as the straight decode mode. For details on each decoder see "Glossary" (p.146).

#### 1 Press SUR.DECODE to select a surround decoder.

Each time you press the key, the surround decoder switches.



<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pro Logic	Uses the Dolby Pro Logic decoder suitable for any sources.
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PLIIx Movie	Uses the Dolby Pro Logic IIx decoder (or Dolby Pro Logic II decoder) suitable for movies.
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PLII Movie	



PURE DIRECT



ENHANCER

<input type="checkbox"/> <b>PLIIx Music</b>	Uses the Dolby Pro Logic IIx decoder (or Dolby Pro Logic II decoder) suitable for music.
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>PLII Music</b>	
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>PLIIx Game</b>	Uses the Dolby Pro Logic IIx decoder (or Dolby Pro Logic II decoder) suitable for games.
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>PLII Game</b>	
<b>Neo: 6 Cinema</b>	Uses the DTS Neo: 6 decoder suitable for movies.
<b>Neo: 6 Music</b>	Uses the DTS Neo: 6 decoder suitable for music.



- You cannot select the Dolby Pro Logic IIx decoders when headphones are connected or when “Surround Back” in the “Setup” menu is set to “None”.
- To enable 6.1/7.1-channel playback from 5.1-channel sources when surround back speakers are used, set “Extended Surround” (p.97) in the “Option” menu to “ PLIIx Movie”, “ PLIIx Music” or “EX/ES”.

## Enjoying pure high fidelity sound (Pure Direct)

When the Pure Direct mode is enabled, this unit plays back the selected source with the least circuitry to reduce the electrical noise from other circuitry (front display, etc). It allows you to enjoy Hi-Fi sound quality.

### 1 Press PURE DIRECT.

Each time you press the key, the Pure Direct mode is enabled or disabled.



- When the Pure Direct mode is enabled, the following functions are not available.
  - Selecting sound programs
  - Adjusting the tone control
  - Operating the on-screen menu
  - Viewing information on the front display (when not operated)

## Enjoying compressed music with enhanced sound (Compressed Music Enhancer)

### compressed music ENHANCER

Compressed Music Enhancer improves the sound enhancer near to the original depth and width of compressed music sources. This function can be used along with any other sound modes.

### 1 Press ENHANCER.

Each time you press the key, Compressed Music Enhancer is enabled or disabled.



“ENHANCER” lights up



- Compressed Music Enhancer does not work on the following audio sources.
  - Signals of which sampling rate is over 48kHz
  - High-definition streaming audio



- You can also use “Enhancer” (p.97) in the “Option” menu to enable/disable Compressed Music Enhancer.

## Enjoying surround sound with headphones (SILENT CINEMA)



You can enjoy surround or sound field effects like a multi-channel speaker system with stereo headphones by connecting the headphones to the PHONES jack and selecting a sound program or a surround decoder.

## Listening to FM/AM radio

You can tune into a radio station by specifying its frequency or selecting from registered radio stations. Since this unit supports the HD Radio feature (p.60), you can select an audio program when this unit is tuned into an HD Radio station that provides multiple audio programs.



- If you cannot have a good reception on the radio, adjust the direction of the FM/AM antennas.

### Selecting a frequency for reception

**1 Press TUNER to select “TUNER” as the input source.**

**2 Press FM or AM to select a band.**



**3 Use the following keys to set a frequency.**

**TUN./CH:** Increase/decrease the frequency.

Hold down the key for about a second to search the station automatically.

**Numeric keys:** Enter a frequency directly. For example, to select 98.5 MHz, press “9”, “8” and “5”.

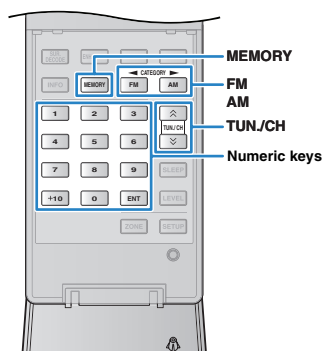
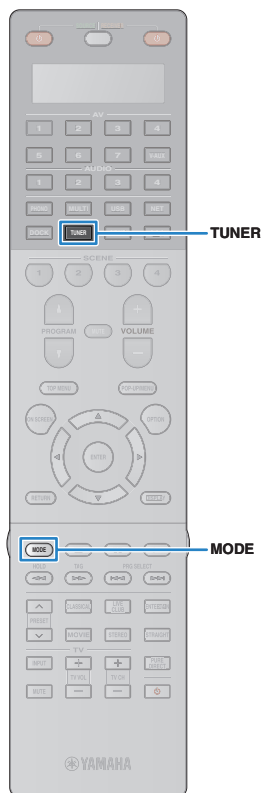


“TUNED” lights up when a signal is received from a radio station.

“STEREO” also lights up when a stereo signal is received.



- “Wrong Station!” appears when you enter a frequency that is out of receivable range



- You can switch between “Auto” (stereo) and “Mono” (monaural) for FM radio reception by pressing MODE. When signal reception for FM radio station is unstable, switching to “Mono” may improve it. (HD Radio programs are not available when this unit is in the monaural reception mode.)

### Registering favorite radio stations (preset)

You can register up to 40 radio stations as presets. Once you registered stations, you can easily tune into those stations by selecting the preset number.



- You can automatically register FM radio stations with strong signals and HD Radio (FM/AM) stations using “Auto Preset” (p.63).

### Registering a radio station

Select a radio station manually and register it to a preset number.

**1 Follow “Selecting a frequency for reception” (p.59) to tune into a desired radio station.**

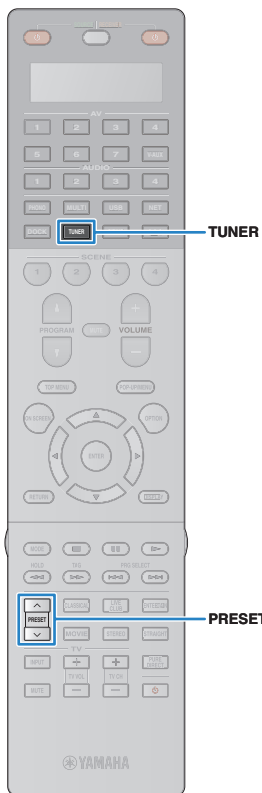


- To register a specific HD Radio program, select an audio program (p.61) after tuning into the radio station.

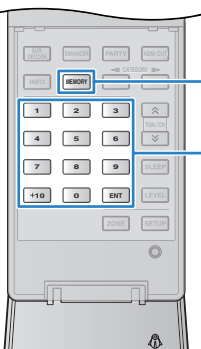
**2 Hold down MEMORY for more than 2 seconds.**

The radio station will be registered to the preset number “01” for the first time. After that, it will be registered to an empty preset number (next to the lastly-registered preset number).





TUNER



PRESET

MEMORY

Numeric keys



- To select a preset number to which the station will be registered, press MEMORY once after tuning into a desired radio station, use PRESET or numeric keys to select a preset number, and then press MEMORY again.

“Empty” (not in use) or frequency currently registered



## Selecting a preset station

Tune into a registered radio station by selecting the preset number.

- 1 Press TUNER to select “TUNER” as the input source.

- 2 Press PRESET repeatedly to select a desired radio station.

You can also enter a preset number (01 to 40) directly by using the numeric keys after pressing PRESET once.



- “No Presets” appears when no radio stations are registered.
- “Wrong Num.” appears when an invalid number is entered.
- “Empty” appears when a preset number not in use is entered.



- To clear preset stations, use “Clear Preset” or “Clear All Preset” (p.63).

## HD Radio™ tuning

HD Radio Technology is a new technology that enables FM/AM radio stations to broadcast programs digitally. Digital broadcasting provides listeners with radically improved audio quality and reception as well as new data services. Furthermore, supplemental program services allow listeners to select from up to 8 HD Radio programs multicast on a single FM HD Radio channel. For further information on HD Radio Technology, visit “<http://www.ibequity.com/>”. This unit is equipped with an HD Radio reception feature, facilitating CD quality FM broadcasts as well as analog FM stereo quality AM broadcasts. In addition, this unit can receive both audio and data (such as song titles, artist names, album titles and program types) from all HD Radio programs (HD1 to HD8).

- PSD**
  - Program Service Data: Contributes to the superior user experience of HD Radio Technology. Presents song name, artist, station IDs, HD2/HD3 Channel Guide, and other relevant data streams.
- HD2/HD3**
  - Adjacent to traditional main stations are extra local FM channels. These HD2/HD3 Channels provide new, original music as well as deep cuts into traditional genre.
- Digital Sound**
  - Digital, CD-quality sound. HD Radio Technology enables local radio stations to broadcast a clean digital signal. AM sounds like today's FM and FM sounds like a CD.
- iTunes® Tagging**
  - iTunes® Tagging provides you the opportunity to discover a wide range of content and the means to “tag” that content for later review and purchase from the iTunes® Store.

### When tuning into an HD Radio station

Relative/total program number  
(when multiple programs are available)



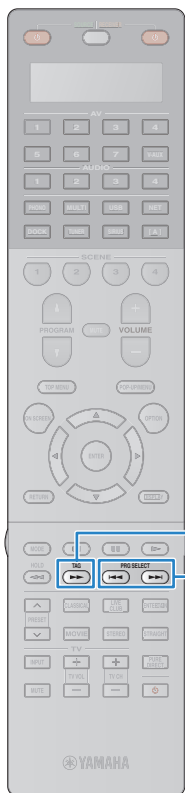
“HD” lights up

Absolute program number  
(when multiple programs are available)



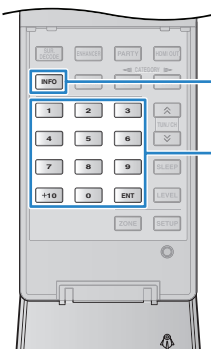
- This unit is capable of receiving both hybrid and all-digital FM/AM radio stations. If you cannot search the desired all-digital HD Radio station by holding down TUN./CH, enter the frequency directly using the numeric keys.
- When this unit is in the monaural reception mode (p.59), you can tune into the analog part of a hybrid HD Radio station only.





TAG

PRG SELECT



INFO

Numeric keys  
ENT

## Selecting an HD Radio™ audio program

You can select an audio program when this unit is tuned into an HD Radio station that provides multiple audio programs (up to 8).

### 1 Press PRG SELECT repeatedly to select a desired audio program.

You can also enter an audio program number (1 to 8) directly by using the numeric keys. For example, to select program 3, press 3 and then ENT (or just leave it).



## Using iTunes Tagging

iTunes Tagging enables you to “tag” songs for subsequent preview and purchase on iTunes. For details on the iTunes Tagging, visit “<http://www.ibiquity.com/>”.



- If any error message appears on the front display, see “Error indications for iTunes Tagging” (p.145).

### 1 Tune into an HD Radio station and select an audio program (if available).

If the selected HD Radio program (or song being played) supports iTunes Tagging, “TAG” lights up.

“TAG” lights up



### 2 While a song you want to tag is being played back, press TAG.

The following message appears if the tag data is stored on this unit.

The number of tag data stored on this unit (up to 50)



- “Insufficient Data” appears when tagging is not currently available.



- This unit transmits the tag data to the iPod if an iPod that supports iTunes Tagging is connected to this unit using a USB cable (p.70) or an iPod dock (p.71). Otherwise, this unit stores up to 50 tag data in the internal memory and will transmit it next time your iPod is connected.

## Displaying the HD Radio™ information

You can switch the HD Radio information displayed on the front display.

### 1 Press INFO.

Each time you press the key, the item switches.



Item name

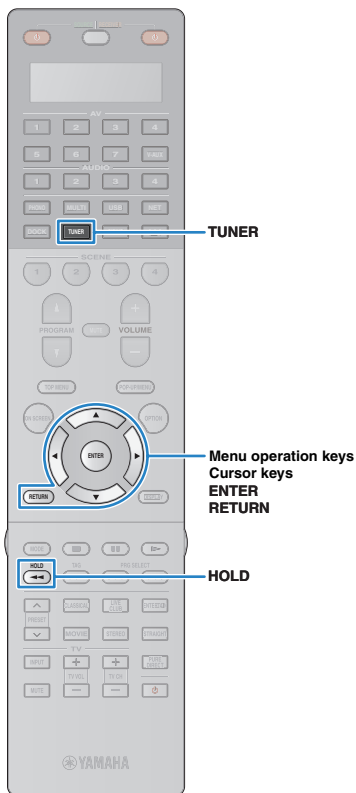
About 3 seconds later, the information is displayed.



Station Info	Frequency, station name (call sign)
Category	Station name (call sign), program category
Artist/Song	Station name (call sign), artist name/song title
Album	Station name (call sign), album title
Tag Info	Frequency, the number of tag data stored on this unit
DSP Program	Frequency, sound program selected on this unit
Audio Decoder	Frequency, decoder selected on this unit



- Some audio programs may not provide information depending on the station or period of time.



## Operating the radio on the TV

You can view the radio information or select a radio station on the TV.

- 1 **Press TUNER to select “TUNER” as the input source.**

The playback screen is displayed on the TV.

### ■ Playback screen

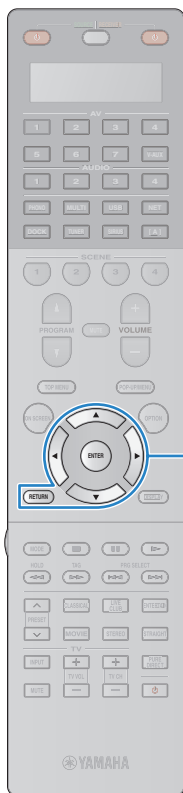


- 1 **TAG/HOLD indicators**  
 “TAG” lights up when tagging is available.  
 “HOLD” flashes when the hold function is enabled.
- 2 **Radio station information**  
 Displays the information of the selected radio station such as the selected band (FM/AM) and frequency.  
 When tuning into an HD Radio station (p.60), the selected audio program number and HD Radio information (station name [call sign], program category, artist name, album name and song title) is also displayed.  
 Use the cursor keys to select HD Radio information to be scrolled.
- 3 **HD indicator**  
 Lights up when this unit is receiving digital broadcasting signals.
- 4 **TUNED/STEREO indicators**  
 “TUNED” lights up when a signal is received from a radio station.  
 “STEREO” lights up when a stereo signal is received.
- 5 **Operation menu**  
 Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER to confirm the selection.  
 To close the submenu, press RETURN.

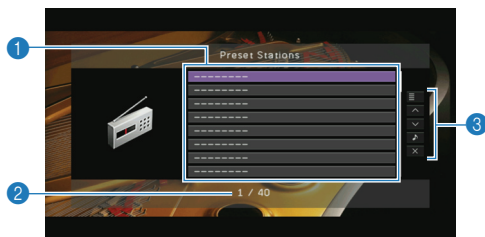
Menu	Submenu	Function
	FM	Switches to FM/AM.
	AM	
	Tuning (+/-)	Selects a frequency.
	Auto (+/-)	Selects a radio station automatically.
	Program (+/-)	Selects an audio program (when multiple audio programs are available).
<b>Manual Tuning</b>	Memory	Registers the selected station as presets.
	Direct	Enters a frequency directly.
	Hold	Enables/disables the hold function. When the hold function is enabled, the HD Radio information (artist name, song title, etc.) will remain displayed.
	Tag	Applies the iTunes Tagging to the song being played back (when tagging is available).
<b>Browse</b>		Moves to the browse screen (preset station list).
<b>Screen Off</b>		Closes the screen display and shows the background. Press one of the menu operation keys to redisplay it.



- You can also use HOLD on the remote control to enable/disable the hold function.



## ■ Browse screen



### 1 Preset station list

Displays the list of preset stations. Use the cursor keys to select a preset station and press ENTER to tune into it.

### 2 Preset number

### 3 Operation menu

Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER to confirm the selection.

To close the submenu, press RETURN.

Menu	Submenu	Function
<b>Utility</b>	Memory	Registers the current station to the preset number selected in the list.
	Auto Preset	Automatically registers FM radio stations with strong signals and HD Radio (FM/AM) stations (up to 40 stations).
	Clear Preset	Clear the preset station selected in the list.
	Clear All Preset	Clear all the preset stations.
<b>1 Page Up</b>		Moves to the previous/next page of the list.
<b>1 Page Down</b>		
<b>Now Playing</b>		Moves to the playback screen.
<b>Screen Off</b>		Closes the screen display and shows the background. Press one of the menu operation keys to redisplay it.



- If HD Radio stations are detected by "Auto Preset", only the audio program 1 (HD1) will be registered. If you want to register a specific HD Radio program, register it manually (p.59).

## Listening to SIRIUS Satellite Radio™

To listen to Satellite Radio, you'll need to connect a SIRIUS Satellite Radio tuner (sold separately) to your SIRIUS-Ready receiver. SIRIUS Satellite Radio is available to residents of the US (except Alaska and Hawaii) and Canada.

Satellite Radio delivers a variety of commercial-free music from categories ranging from Pop, Rock, Country, R&B, Dance, Jazz, Classical and many more plus coverage of all the top professional and college sports including play by play games from select leagues and teams. Additional programming includes expert sports talk, uncensored entertainment, comedy, family programming, local traffic and weather and news from your most trusted sources.

Once you've purchased a SIRIUS tuner you'll need to activate it and subscribe to begin enjoying the service. Easy to follow installation and setup instructions are provided with the SIRIUS tuner. There are a variety of programming packages available, including the option of adding "The Best of XM" programming to the SIRIUS service. The "Best of XM" service is not available to SIRIUS Canada subscribers at this time. Please check with SIRIUS Canada for any updates using the numbers and web address below.

Family friendly packages are also available to restrict channels featuring content that may be inappropriate for children.

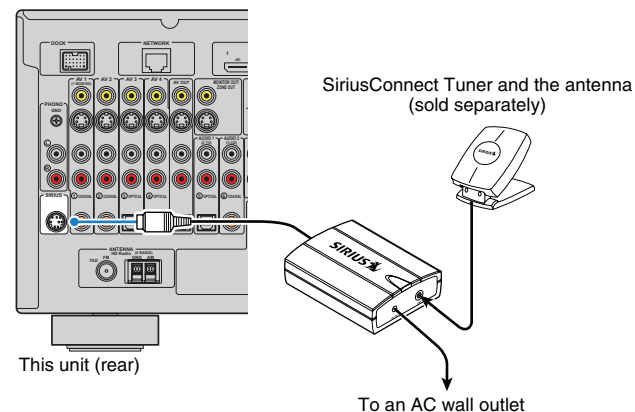
To subscribe to SIRIUS, U.S. and Canadian customers can call 1-888-539-SIRI (1-888-539-7474) or visit [siriusxm.com](http://siriusxm.com) (US) or [siriuscanada.ca](http://siriuscanada.ca) (Canada).

### SIRIUS Radio Legal

SIRIUS and all related marks and logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc. and its subsidiaries. All other marks and logos are the property of their respective owners. All rights reserved. SIRIUS subscription sold separately. Taxes and a one-time activation fee may apply. SIRIUS tuner required (sold separately) to receive the SIRIUS service. All programming and fees subject to change. It is prohibited to copy, decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer, hack, manipulate or otherwise make available any technology or software incorporated in receivers compatible with the SIRIUS Satellite Radio System. Service not available in Alaska or Hawaii.

## Connecting the SiriusConnect™ tuner

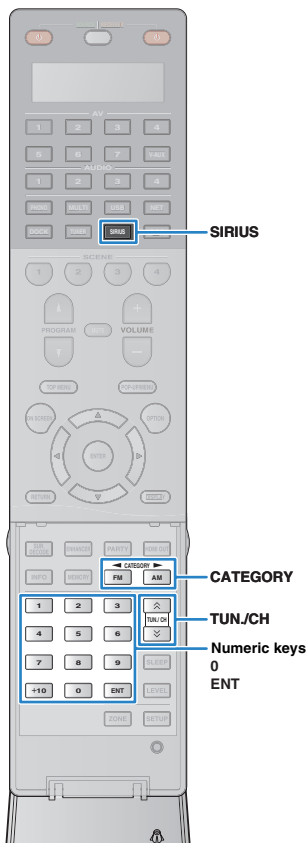
Connect the SiriusConnect tuner (sold separately) to the SIRIUS jack of this unit. For details, see the instruction manuals provided with the SiriusConnect tuner.



- To ensure optimal reception of the SIRIUS Satellite Radio signals, the antenna of the SiriusConnect tuner must be placed at or near a window with no obstacles in the path to the sky. The orientation of the antenna for the best reception differs depending on the area. Refer to the instruction manuals provided with the SiriusConnect tuner for the installation of the antenna. You can mount it indoors or outdoors.
- Use the antenna reception level information on the front display (p.67) or the TV screen (p.67) to check the antenna reception level and adjust the orientation of the antenna.
- You need to connect the SiriusConnect tuner to an AC wall outlet.

### Note

- "CHECK SR TUNER" or "ANTENNA ERROR" appears when the connection of the SiriusConnect tuner or antenna is incorrect. In this case, check the connection of the SiriusConnect tuner and the antenna.
- "NOT SUPPORTED" appears when this unit does not support the connected SiriusConnect tuner.



## Activating SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ subscription

Before using the SIRIUS Satellite Radio feature, you need to activate your SIRIUS Satellite Radio subscription. To activate the subscription, you need the SIRIUS ID which is uniquely assigned to the SiriusConnect tuner. SIRIUS ID is 12-digit number which is indicated on the package of the SiriusConnect tuner and on the label of the SiriusConnect tuner. SIRIUS ID is also configured on the front display when you tune into the SIRIUS Satellite Radio channel “0”.

### ■ Displaying the SIRIUS ID of your SiriusConnect tuner

**1** Press SIRIUS to select “SIRIUS” as the input source.

**2** Press 0 and then ENT to display the SIRIUS ID.

About 3 seconds later, 12-digit SIRIUS ID appears on the front display.



SIRIUS ID

Write down the SIRIUS ID in the space provided below.

ID: \_\_\_\_\_

**3** Contact SIRIUS Satellite Radio to activate your subscription.

Once the activation is finished, “SUB UPDATE” appears.

#### SIRIUS Satellite Radio online information

Contact for activation  
 URL: <https://activate.siriusradio.com/>  
 Phone: 1-888-539-SIRIUS (1-888-539-7474)



- “F/W UPDATE” appears when the SiriusConnect tuner is updating the firmware.
- “UPDATING” appears when the SiriusConnect tuner is updating the channel list.
- “SIRIUS LOADING” appears when this unit is communicating with the SiriusConnect tuner.

## Selecting a SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ channel



- If any error message appears on the front display, see “Error indications for SIRIUS Satellite Radio™” (p.145).

**1** Press SIRIUS to select “SIRIUS” as the input source.

**2** Use the following keys to select a SIRIUS Satellite Radio channel.

**TUN./CH:** Switches the SIRIUS Satellite Radio channels (All Channel Search). Hold down the key for quick search.

All Channel Search Channel number/name



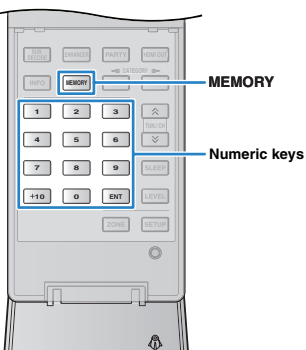
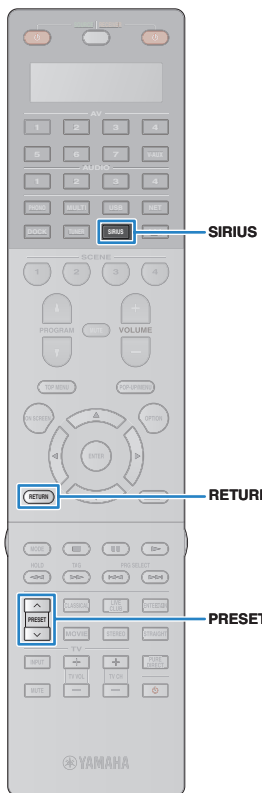
**CATEGORY:** Switches the channel categories. Hold down the key for quick search. If you press TUN./CH within 10 seconds after selecting a category, you can switch the channel within the selected category (Category Search).

Category Search Category name



Channel number/name

**Numeric keys:** Enter a channel number directly. For example, to select the channel 123, press “1”, “2” and “3”. To specify a one-digit or two-digit channel number, enter the channel number and then press ENT (or just leave it).



- This unit skips the following channels during All Channel Search or Category Search. This is not a malfunction.
  - Channels that are not currently in service.
  - Channels that you do not subscribe to.
  - Channels that are locked (p.69).
- To listen to the locked channels (p.69), use the numeric keys to enter the channel number directly or PRESET to select from the preset number, and then enter the 4-digit Parental Lock code number.

## Registering favorite channels (preset)

You can register up to 40 SIRIUS Satellite Radio channels as presets. Once you registered channels, you can easily recall those channels by selecting the preset number.

### ■ Registering a channel

Select a SIRIUS Satellite Radio channel and register it to a preset number.

#### 1 Follow “Selecting a SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ channel” (p.65) to select a desired channel.

#### 2 Hold down MEMORY for more than 2 seconds.

The channel will be registered to the preset number “01” for the first time. After that, it will be registered to an empty preset number (next to the lastly-registered preset number).

Preset number      Registered channel



- To select a preset number to which the channel will be registered, press MEMORY once after selecting a desired channel, use PRESET or numeric keys to select a preset number, and then press MEMORY again (or RETURN to cancel the registration).

“---” (not in use) or channel currently registered



Channel to be registered

### ■ Selecting a preset channel

Recall a registered channel by selecting the preset number.

#### 1 Press SIRIUS to select “SIRIUS” as the input source.

#### 2 Press PRESET repeatedly to select a desired channel.

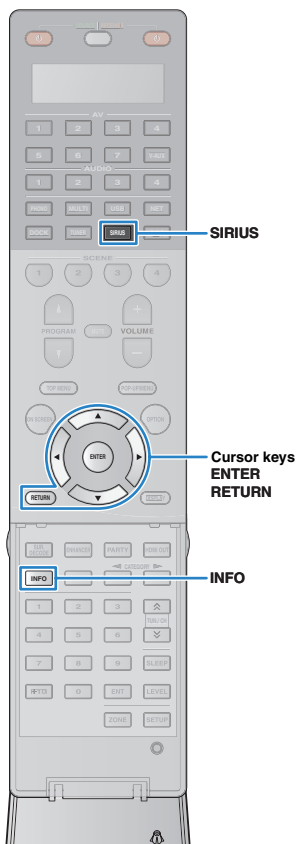
You can also enter a preset number (01 to 40) directly by using the numeric keys.



- “No Presets” appears when no channels are registered.
- “Wrong Num.” appears when an invalid number is entered.
- “PR Empty” appears when a preset number not in use is entered.



- To clear preset stations, use “Clear Preset” or “Clear All Preset” (p.68).



## Displaying the SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ information

You can switch the SIRIUS Satellite Radio information displayed on the front display.

### 1 Press INFO.

Each time you press the key, the item switches.



Item name

About 3 seconds later, the information is displayed.

Channel category (always displayed)      Channel number/name (always displayed)



Information

<b>Artist/Song</b>	Artist name, song title
<b>Composer</b>	Composer name
<b>Antenna Level</b>	Antenna reception level
<b>DSP Program</b>	Sound program selected on this unit
<b>Audio Decoder</b>	Decoder selected on this unit

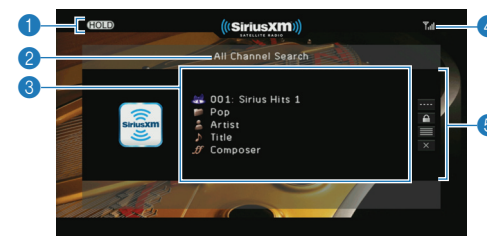
## Operating SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ on the TV

You can view the SIRIUS Satellite Radio information or select a channel on the TV.

### 1 Press SIRIUS to select “SIRIUS” as the input source.

The playback screen is displayed on the TV.

### ■ Playback screen



#### 1 HOLD indicator

Flashes when the hold function is enabled.

#### 2 Current search mode (or preset number)

#### 3 Playback information

Displays the channel name, channel category, artist name, song title and composer name.

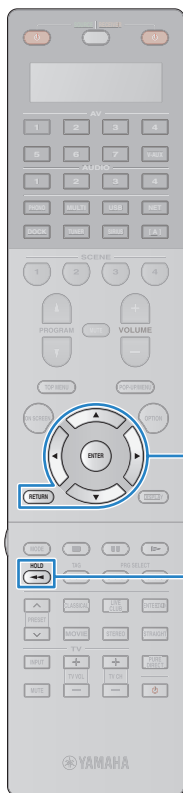
Use the cursor keys to select information to be scrolled.

#### 4 Antenna reception level

#### 5 Operation menu

Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER to confirm the selection.

To close the submenu, press RETURN.



Menu operation keys  
Cursor keys  
ENTER  
RETURN

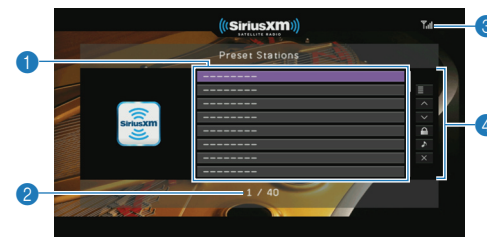
HOLD

Menu	Submenu	Function
<b>Radio Control</b>	Channel (+/-)	Switches the SIRIUS Satellite Radio channels (All Channel Search). Hold down the button for quick search.
	Category (+/-)	Switches the channel categories. Hold down the button for quick search. If you press "Channel (+/-)" within 10 seconds after selecting a category, you can switch the channel within the selected category (Category Search).
	Memory	Registers the selected channel as presets.
	Direct	Enters a channel number directly.
	Hold	Enables/disables the hold function. When the hold function is enabled, the playback information (artist name, song title, etc.) will remain displayed.
<b>Parental Lock</b>		Restricts access to specific channels. For details, see "Restricting access to specific channels (Parental Lock)" (p.69).
<b>Browse</b>		Moves to the browse screen (preset channel list).
<b>Screen Off</b>		Closes the screen display and shows the background. Press one of the menu operation keys to redisplay it.



- You can also use HOLD on the remote control to enable/disable the hold function.

## Browse screen



### 1 Preset channel list

Displays the list of preset channels. Use the cursor keys to select a preset channel and press ENTER to recall it.

### 2 Preset number

### 3 Antenna reception level

### 4 Operation menu

Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER to confirm the selection.

To close the submenu, press RETURN.

Menu	Submenu	Function
<b>Utility</b>	Memory	Register the current channel to the preset number selected in the list.
	Clear Preset	Clear the preset channel selected in the list.
	Clear All Preset	Clear all the preset channels.
<b>1 Page Up</b>		Moves to the previous/next page of the list.
<b>1 Page Down</b>		
<b>Parental Lock</b>		Restricts access to specific channels. For details, see "Restricting access to specific channels (Parental Lock)" (p.69).
<b>Now Playing</b>		Moves to the playback screen.
<b>Screen Off</b>		Closes the screen display and shows the background. Press one of the menu operation keys to redisplay it.





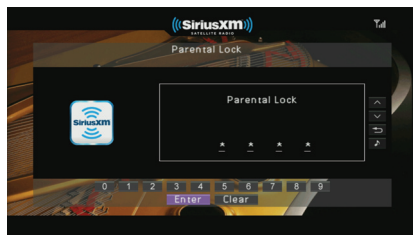
## ■ Restricting access to specific channels (Parental Lock)

You can restrict access to specific SIRIUS Satellite Radio channels by setting a Parental Lock code number. The locked channel will be skipped during All Channel Search or Category Search.

**1** In the playback screen or browse screen, select “Parental Lock”.

**2** Use the cursor keys and ENTER to enter a desired 4-digit code number.

If you have already set the code number, enter it.

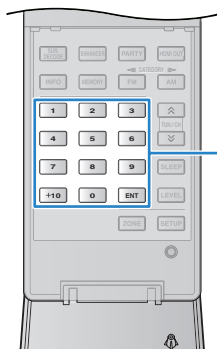


- To clear the entry, select “Clear”.

**3** Use the cursor keys to select “Enter” and press ENTER.

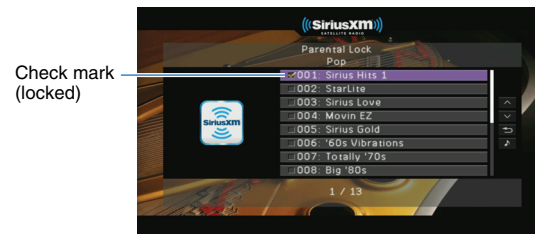
The Parental Lock setting screen appears.

**4** Use the cursor keys to select a channel category and press ENTER.



**5** Use the cursor keys to select a channel to be locked and press ENTER.

Each time you press ENTER, the channel is locked or unlocked.



- To return to the previous screen, press RETURN.
- To listen to a locked channel, use the numeric keys to enter the channel number directly or PRESET to select from the preset number, and then enter the 4-digit code number.



- If you forget the code number or want to change it, use “SIRIUS LOCK” (p.126) in the “ADVANCED SETUP” menu to reset the code number.

## Playing back iPod music/videos

You can play back iPod music/videos on this unit using a USB cable supplied with iPod, an optional Yamaha iPod dock (such as YDS-12) or an optional Yamaha iPod wireless system (YID-W10).



- This manual describes both the “iPod” and “iPhone” as the “iPod”. “iPod” means both “iPod” and “iPhone” unless the explanation describes exceptions.
- Some features may not be compatible depending on the model or software version of an iPod, or the model of an iPod dock.

### Functional differences depending on the way of connection

	USB cable supplied with iPod	Yamaha iPod universal dock (such as YDS-12)	Yamaha iPod wireless system (YID-W10)
Audio output	✓	✓	✓
Video output	✓*	✓	—
Operation with remote control of the unit	✓	✓	—
Operation with iPod	✓	✓	✓
Operation on TV screen	✓	✓	—
Charging	✓	✓	✓
Charging during standby mode	—	✓	✓
<b>Supported iPod (as of April 2011)</b>	iPod touch iPod nano (2 gen. to 6 gen.) iPod classic iPhone 4 iPhone 3GS iPhone 3G iPhone	iPod touch iPod nano iPod classic iPod with video iPod with color display iPod with click wheel iPod mini iPhone 4 iPhone 3GS iPhone 3G iPhone	iPod touch iPod nano iPod classic iPod with video iPhone 4 iPhone 3GS iPhone 3G iPhone

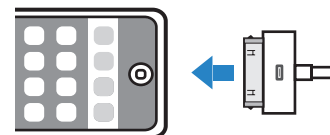
\* Requires an Apple Composite AV Cable (not supplied). Connect the USB and composite video plugs of the Apple Composite AV cable to the USB jack and VIDEO AUX (VIDEO) jack of this unit and set “Video Out (USB)” (p.100) in the “Input” menu to “V-AUX”.

## Connecting an iPod

### Using a USB cable

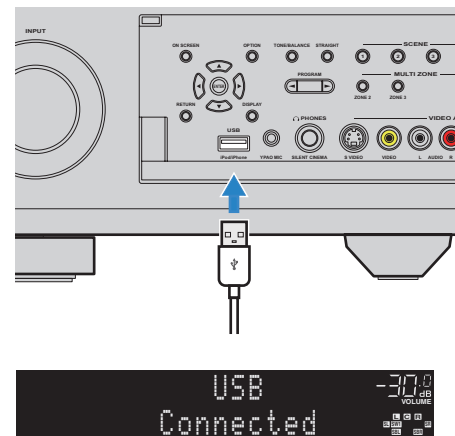
Connect your iPod to this unit with the USB cable supplied with the iPod.

#### 1 Connect the USB cable to the iPod.



#### 2 Connect the USB cable to the USB jack.

This unit (front)

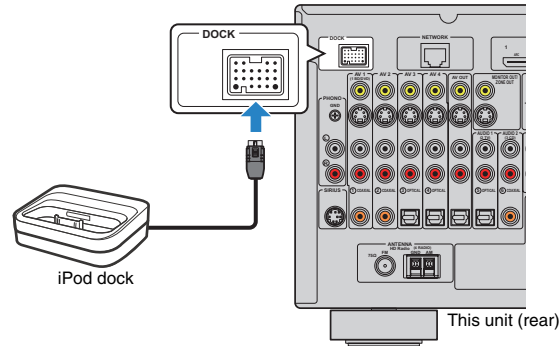


## ■ Using an iPod dock

Refer to the instruction manual of the iPod dock in addition.

### 1 Set this unit to standby mode and connect the iPod dock to the DOCK jack.

Locate the iPod dock at the distance as far as from this unit.



### 2 Connect your iPod to the iPod dock and turn on this unit.



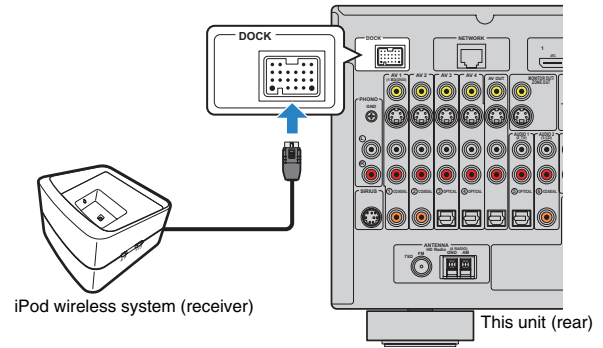
- While an iPod is connected to the iPod dock, the iPod is charged. You can select whether to charge the iPod when this unit is in standby mode using "Standby Charge" (p.99) in the "Input" menu.

## ■ Using an iPod wireless system

When using an iPod wireless system, operate your iPod itself to start playback after making a connection. Refer to the instruction manual of the iPod wireless system in addition.

### 1 Disconnect the power cable from the AC wall outlet and connect the iPod wireless system (receiver) to the DOCK jack.

Locate the iPod wireless system (receiver) at the distance as far as from this unit.



### 2 Connect the power cable to an AC wall outlet.

### 3 Connect your iPod to the iPod wireless system (transmitter).

### 4 On your iPod, select the content and start playback.

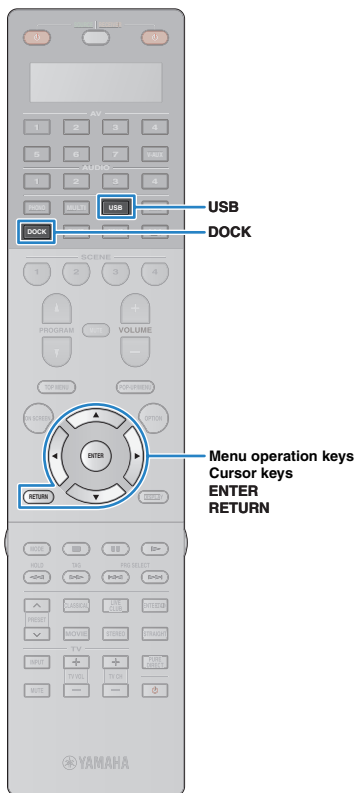
This unit automatically turns on and selects "DOCK" as the input source.



- You can select whether to control this unit (power on/off, input selection and volume adjustment) in conjunction with iPod operations using "iPod Interlock" (p.99) in the "Input" menu. When the iPod interlock function is disabled, turn on this unit and select the input source manually.
- While the iPod wireless system (transmitter) is placed on the iPod wireless system (receiver), the iPod is charged. You can select whether to charge the iPod when this unit is in standby mode using "Standby Charge" (p.99) in the "Input" menu.

#### Caution

- When you use iPod controls to adjust volume, the volume may be unexpectedly loud. This could result in damage to this unit or speakers. If the volume suddenly increases during playback, remove the iPod from the iPod wireless system (transmitter) immediately. To prevent this problem, we recommend using "Max Volume" (p.113) in the "Setup" menu to set the maximum volume level for this unit.



## Playback of iPod contents

When using a USB cable or an iPod dock, you can control the iPod with the menu displayed on the TV.



- When using an iPod wireless system, you cannot control the iPod from the TV screen. Operate your iPod itself to select the content and start playback.

- 1 **When using a USB cable: press USB to select “USB” as the input source.  
When using an iPod dock: press DOCK to select “DOCK” as the input source.**

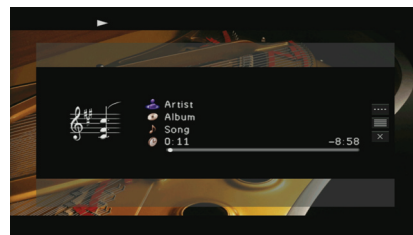
The browse screen is displayed on the TV.



\* Display example (when using an iPod dock)

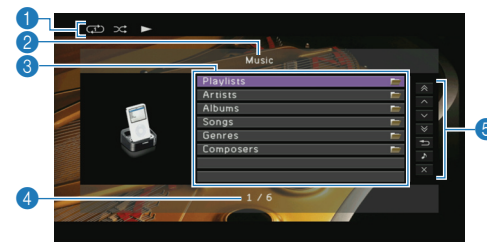
- 2 **Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER.**

If a song is selected, playback starts and the playback screen is displayed.



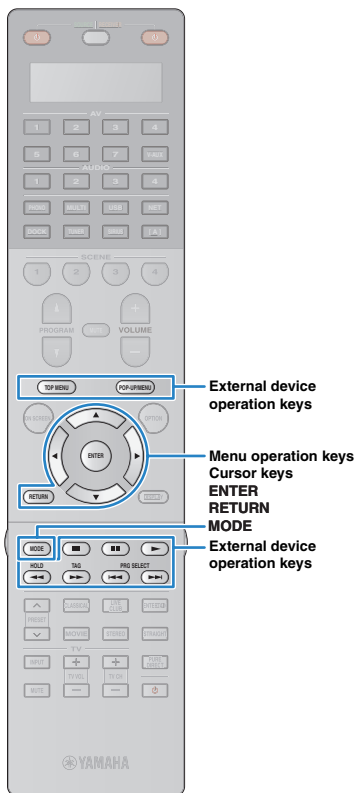
- To return to the previous screen, press RETURN.
- To operate the iPod itself to select a content or control playback, switch to the simple play mode (p.73).

## ■ Browse screen

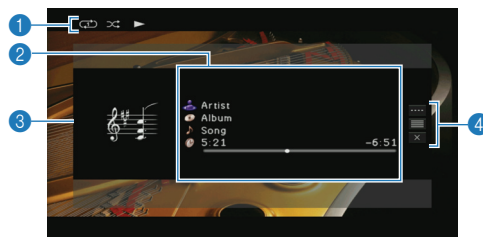


- 1 **Status indicators**  
Display the current shuffle/repeat settings (p.74) and playback status (play/pause, etc).
- 2 **List name**
- 3 **Contents list**  
Displays the list of iPod contents. Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER to confirm the selection.
- 4 **Item number/total**
- 5 **Operation menu**  
Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER to confirm the selection.

Menu	Function
1 Page Up	Moves to the previous/next page of the list.
1 Page Down	
10 Pages Up	Moves to 10 pages forward/backward.
10 Pages Down	
Return	Returns to the higher-level list.
Now Playing	Moves to the playback screen.
Screen Off	Closes the screen display and shows the background. Press one of the menu operation keys to redisplay it.



## ■ Playback screen



### 1 Status indicators

Display the current shuffle/repeat settings (p.74) and playback status (play/pause, etc).

### 2 Playback information

Displays the artist name, album name, song title and elapsed/remaining time.  
Use the cursor keys to select information to be scrolled.

### 3 Album image

### 4 Operation menu

Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER to confirm the selection.  
To close the submenu, press RETURN.

Menu	Submenu	Function
		Resumes playback from pause.
		Stops playback.
		Stops playback temporarily.
Play Control		Skips forward/backward.
		Skips forward/backward.
		Searches forward/backward (by holding down).
Browse		Moves to the browse screen.
Screen Off		Closes the screen display and shows the background. Press one of the menu operation keys to redisplay it.



- You can also use the external device operation keys on the remote control to control playback.

## ■ Operating the iPod itself or remote control (simple play)

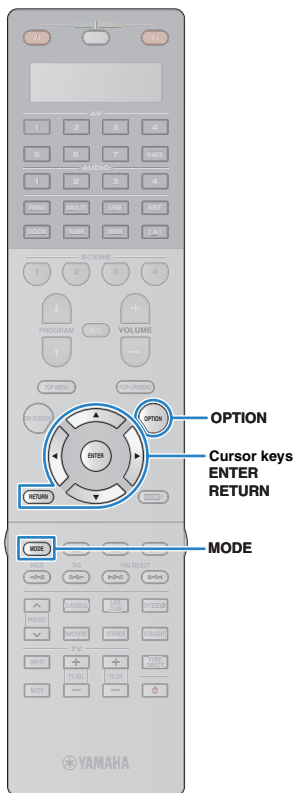
### 1 Press MODE to switch to the simple play mode.

The TV menu screen turns off and iPod operations are enabled.

To display the TV menu screen, press MODE again.

### 2 Operate your iPod itself or the remote control to start playback.

Operational remote control keys	Function	
Cursor keys	Select an item.	
ENTER	Confirms the selection.	
RETURN	Returns to the previous screen.	
External device operation keys		Starts playback or stops playback temporarily.
		Stops playback.
		Skips forward/backward.
		Searches forward/backward (while holding down).
		Searches forward/backward (while holding down).



## ■ Shuffle/repeat settings

You can configure the shuffle/repeat settings of your iPod.



- When using an iPod wireless system, configure the shuffle/repeat settings directly on your iPod.
- During simple play, configure the shuffle/repeat settings directly on your iPod, or press MODE to display the TV menu screen and then follow the procedure below.
- Texts in parentheses denote indications on the front display.





**1** When “USB” or “DOCK” is selected as the input source, press **OPTION**.

**2** Use the cursor keys to select “Shuffle” (Shuffle) or “Repeat” (Repeat) and press **ENTER**.



- To return to the previous screen during menu operations, press RETURN.
- Texts in parentheses denote indications on the front display.

**3** Use the cursor keys (</>) to select a setting and press **ENTER**.

Item	Setting	Function
<b>Shuffle (Shuffle)</b>	Off (Off)	Turns off the shuffle function.
	Songs (Songs)	Plays back songs in random order. “  ” appears in the TV screen.
	Albums (Albums)	Plays back albums in random order. “  ” appears in the TV screen.
<b>Repeat (Repeat)</b>	Off (Off)	Turns off the repeat function.
	One (One)	Plays back the current song repeatedly. “  ” appears in the TV screen.
	All (All)	Plays back all songs repeatedly. “  ” appears in the TV screen.

**4** To exit from the menu, press **OPTION**.

## Playing back music via Bluetooth

You can play back music stored on a Bluetooth component on this unit using a Yamaha Bluetooth wireless audio receiver (such as YBA-10, optional). Refer to the instruction manuals of the Bluetooth receiver and your Bluetooth component in addition. This unit supports A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) of the Bluetooth profile.

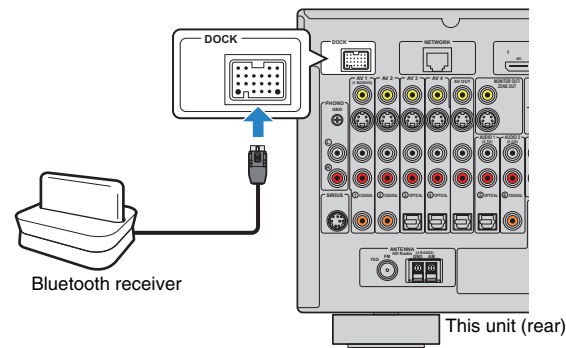


- When connecting your Bluetooth component to the Bluetooth receiver for the first time, you need to perform “pairing” (mutual recognition for 2 Bluetooth components). After that, you only need to establish a wireless connection between those components to play back music via Bluetooth. “Pairing” must be performed between each combination. So if you have several Bluetooth components, you need to pair each of your Bluetooth components with the Bluetooth receiver.

## Connecting a Bluetooth receiver

- 1 When this unit is in standby mode, connect the Bluetooth receiver to the DOCK jack.

Locate the Bluetooth receiver at the distance as far as from this unit.



- 2 Turn on this unit.

## Pairing Bluetooth components

Be sure to perform pairing when connecting a Bluetooth component to the Bluetooth receiver for the first time, or when the pairing setting has been deleted.



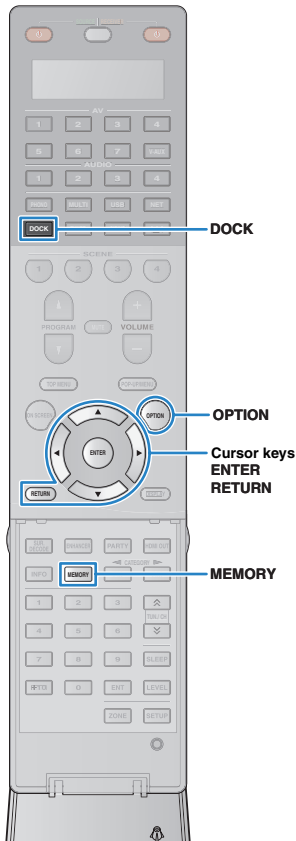
- The Yamaha Bluetooth receiver (YBA-10) can be paired with up to eight Bluetooth components. When the ninth component is paired, the pairing setting for the component which has not been used for the longest period of time will be deleted.
- Texts in parentheses denote indications on the front display.

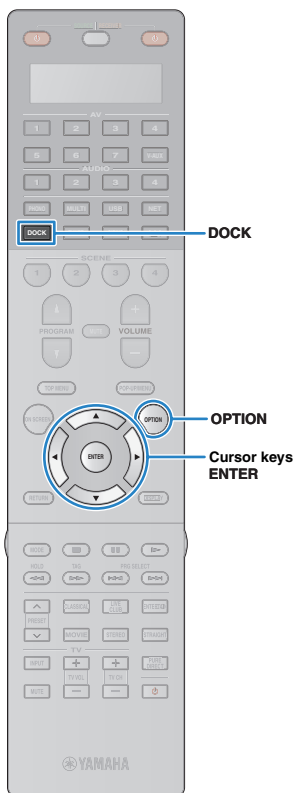
- 1 Press DOCK to select “DOCK” as the input source.
- 2 Turn on your Bluetooth component and set it to the pairing mode.
- 3 Press OPTION, use the cursor keys to select “Pairing” (Pairing), and then press ENTER.

Searching starts. If your Bluetooth component recognizes the Bluetooth receiver, the model name (such as “YBA-10 YAMAHA”) will be displayed in the device list of your component.



- To cancel the search, press RETURN.
- You can also start the search by holding down MEMORY instead of step 3. (To cancel the search, press MEMORY again.)





#### 4 Select the Bluetooth receiver from the device list and enter the pass key “0000”.

“Completed” appears when the pairing is complete.



- Depending on Bluetooth components, “BT connected” appears when the pairing is complete. In this case, the wireless connection has been already established. You just need to start playback on your Bluetooth component to enjoy it on this unit.

#### 5 To exit from the menu, press OPTION.

## Establishing a wireless connection and playing back

When the pairing is complete, follow the procedure below to establish a wireless connection between your Bluetooth component and the Bluetooth receiver. When the connection is established, this unit outputs sounds played back on the Bluetooth component.



- Depending on Bluetooth components, a wireless connection is established automatically or by operating the Bluetooth component. In this case, you can skip steps 2 and 3 below.
- Texts in parentheses denote indications on the front display.

#### 1 Press DOCK to select “DOCK” as the input source.

#### 2 Press OPTION.

#### 3 Use the cursor keys to select “Connect” (Connect) and then press ENTER.

“BT connected” appears when the wireless connection is established.



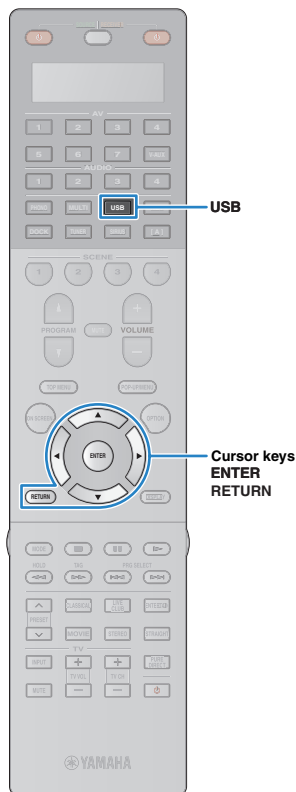
- If the Bluetooth receiver is paired with more than one Bluetooth component, the lastly-connected component is automatically chosen. When you cannot establish a connection with an intended component, perform pairing again or perform the connection operation from the intended component.
- “Not found” appears if a connection cannot be established. Check the followings and try again.
  - The Bluetooth component and Bluetooth receiver are paired.
  - The Bluetooth component is turned on and the Bluetooth mode is enabled.
  - The Bluetooth component is within 10 m (32 ft) of the Bluetooth receiver.

#### 4 Start playback on your Bluetooth component.



- To terminate the wireless connection, select “Disconnect” (Disconnect) in step 3.





## Playing back music stored on a USB storage device

You can play back music files stored on a USB storage device on this unit. Refer to the instruction manuals of the USB storage device in addition.

This unit supports USB mass storage class devices (FAT16 or FAT32 format, except USB HDDs).

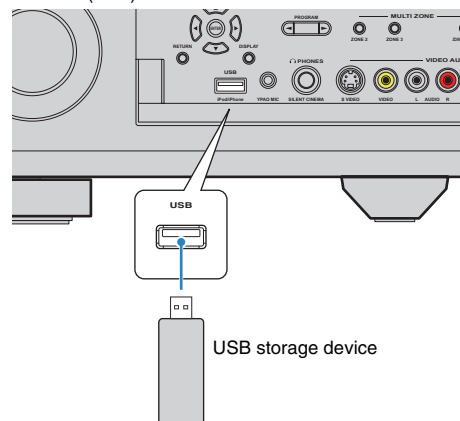


- This unit supports playback of WAV (PCM format only), MP3, WMA, MPEG-4 AAC and FLAC files.
- This unit is compatible with sampling frequency of up to 96 kHz for WAV and FLAC files, and 48 kHz for other files.

## Connecting a USB storage device

### 1 Connect the USB storage device to the USB jack.

This unit (front)



- If the USB storage device contains many files, it may take time to load the files. In this case, "Loading..." appears in the front display.

## Playback of USB storage device contents

Follow the procedure below to operate the USB storage device contents and start playback.

### 1 Press USB to select "USB" as the input source.

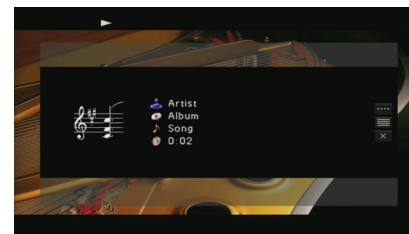
The browse screen is displayed on the TV.



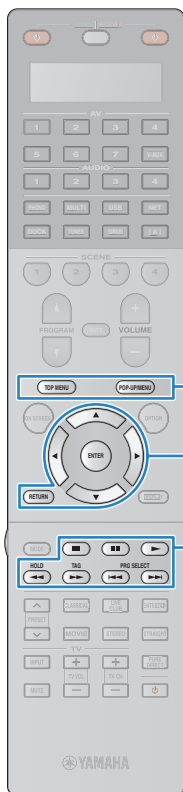
- If playback is ongoing on your USB storage device, the playback screen is displayed.

### 2 Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER.

If a song is selected, playback starts and the playback screen is displayed.



- To return to the previous screen, press RETURN.
- Files not supported by this unit are not listed.
- You can register your favorite items as shortcuts (p.91) and access them directly by selecting the shortcut numbers.

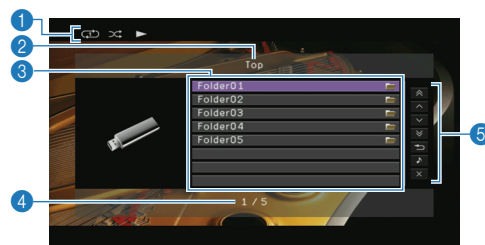


External device operation keys

Menu operation keys  
Cursor keys  
ENTER  
RETURN

External device operation keys

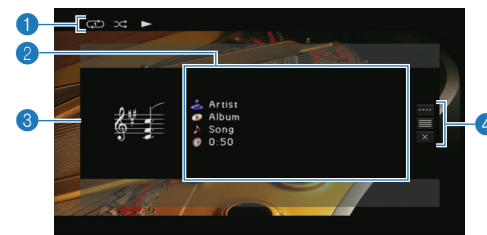
## Browse screen



- 1 Status indicators**  
Display the current shuffle/repeat settings (p.79) and playback status.
- 2 List name**
- 3 Contents list**  
Displays the list of USB storage device contents. Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER to confirm the selection.
- 4 Item number/total**
- 5 Operation menu**  
Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER to confirm the selection.

Menu	Function
<b>1 Page Up</b>	Moves to the previous/next page of the list.
<b>1 Page Down</b>	
<b>10 Pages Up</b>	Moves to 10 pages forward/backward.
<b>10 Pages Down</b>	
<b>Return</b>	Returns to the higher-level list.
<b>Now Playing</b>	Moves to the playback screen.
<b>Screen Off</b>	Closes the screen display and shows the background. Press one of the menu operation keys to redisplay it.

## Playback screen

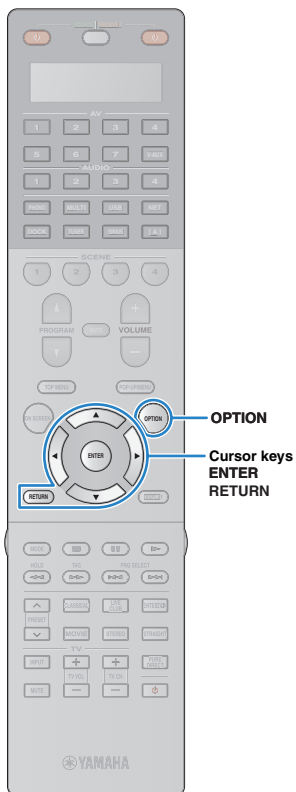


- 1 Status indicators**  
Display the current shuffle/repeat settings (p.79) and playback status.
- 2 Playback information**  
Displays the artist name, album name, song title and elapsed time. Use the cursor keys to select information to be scrolled.
- 3 Album image**
- 4 Operation menu**  
Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER to confirm the selection.  
To close the submenu, press RETURN.

Menu	Submenu	Function
	■	Stops playback.
<b>Play Control</b>	⏮	Skips forward/backward.
	⏭	
<b>Browse</b>		Moves to the browse screen.
<b>Screen Off</b>		Closes the screen display and shows the background. Press one of the menu operation keys to redisplay it.



- You can also use the external device operation keys (▶, ■, ◀, ▶▶) on the remote control to control playback.



## ■ Shuffle/repeat settings

You can configure the shuffle/repeat settings for playback of USB storage device contents.



- The shuffle/repeat settings are shared by USB and network sources.




**1** When “USB” is selected as the input source, press **OPTION**.

**2** Use the cursor keys to select “Shuffle” (Shuffle) or “Repeat” (Repeat) and press **ENTER**.

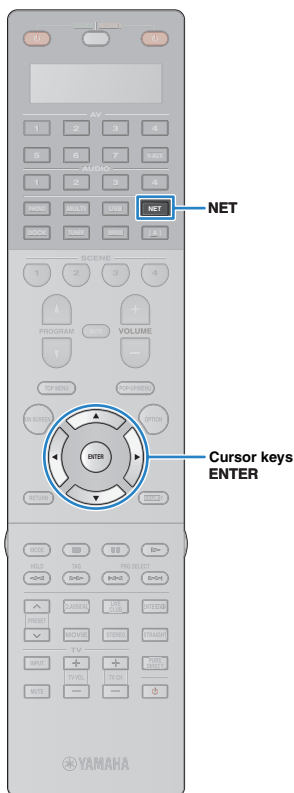


- To return to the previous screen during menu operations, press RETURN.
- Texts in parentheses denote indications on the front display.

**3** Use the cursor keys (</>) to select a setting and press **ENTER**.

Item	Setting	Function
<b>Shuffle (Shuffle)</b>	Off (Off)	Turns off the shuffle function.
	On (On)	Plays back songs in the current album (folder) in random order. “  ” appears in the TV screen.
<b>Repeat (Repeat)</b>	Off (Off)	Turns off the repeat function.
	Single (Single)	Plays back the current song repeatedly. “  ” appears in the TV screen.
	All (All)	Plays back all songs in the current album (folder) repeatedly. “  ” appears in the TV screen.

**4** To exit from the menu, press **OPTION**.



## Playing back music stored on PCs

You can play back music files stored on your PC or DLNA-compatible NAS on this unit.



- To use this function, this unit and your PC must be connected to the network properly (p.40). You can check whether the network parameters (IP address, etc.) are properly assigned to this unit in “Network” (p.124) in the “Information”.
- This unit supports playback of WAV (PCM format only), MP3, WMA, MPEG-4 AAC and FLAC files.
- This unit is compatible with sampling frequency of up to 96 kHz for WAV and FLAC files, and 48 kHz for other files.
- To play back FLAC files, you need to install server software that supports sharing of FLAC files via DLNA on your PC or use a NAS that supports FLAC files.

### Requirements

This unit can play back music files stored on the following music servers.

- PC with Windows Media Player 11 or later installed
- PC with DLNA/UPnP certificate server software installed
- NAS with DLNA/UPnP certification

## Media sharing setup

To play back music files stored on your PC or DLNA-compatible NAS, first you need to configure the media sharing setting on each music server.

### ■ For a PC with Windows Media Player installed

- 1 Check that Windows Media Player 11 or later is installed on your PC.**
- 2 In the media sharing settings, enable the media sharing and select this unit as a device to which the media is shared.**

### ■ For a NAS or a PC with other DLNA sever software installed

Refer to the instruction manual of the device or software and configure the media sharing setting.

## Playback of PC music contents

Follow the procedure below to operate the PC music contents and start playback.

- 1 Press NET repeatedly to select “PC” as the input source.**

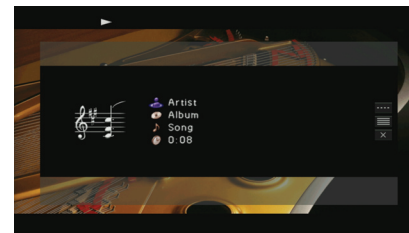
The browse screen is displayed on the TV.

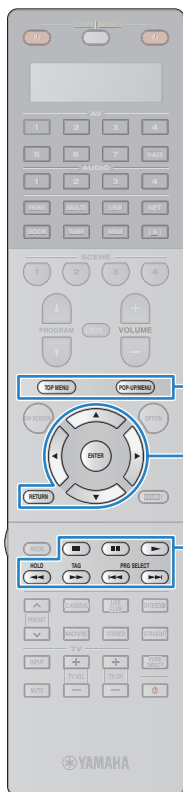


- If playback of a music file selected from this unit is ongoing on your PC, the playback screen is displayed. This function works only when “DMC Control” (p.100) in the “Input” menu is set to “Disable”.

- 2 Use the cursor keys to select a music server and press ENTER.**
- 3 Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER.**

If a song is selected, playback starts and the playback screen is displayed.





External device operation keys

Menu operation keys  
Cursor keys  
ENTER  
RETURN

External device operation keys



- To return to the previous screen, press RETURN.
- Files not supported by this unit are not listed (or cannot be selected even if listed).
- You can register your favorite items as shortcuts (p.91) and access them directly by selecting the shortcut numbers.

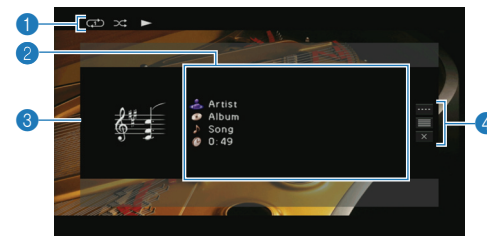
## Browse screen



- Status indicators**  
Display the current shuffle/repeat settings (p.82) and playback status (play/pause).
- List name**
- Contents list**  
Displays the list of PC contents. Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER to confirm the selection.
- Album image**
- Item number/total**
- Operation menu**  
Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER to confirm the selection.

Menu	Function
<b>1 Page Up</b>	Moves to the previous/next page of the list.
<b>1 Page Down</b>	Moves to the previous/next page of the list.
<b>10 Pages Up</b>	Moves to 10 pages forward/backward.
<b>10 Pages Down</b>	Moves to 10 pages forward/backward.
<b>Return</b>	Returns to the higher-level list.
<b>Now Playing</b>	Moves to the playback screen.
<b>Screen Off</b>	Closes the screen display and shows the background. Press one of the menu operation keys to redisplay it.

## Playback screen

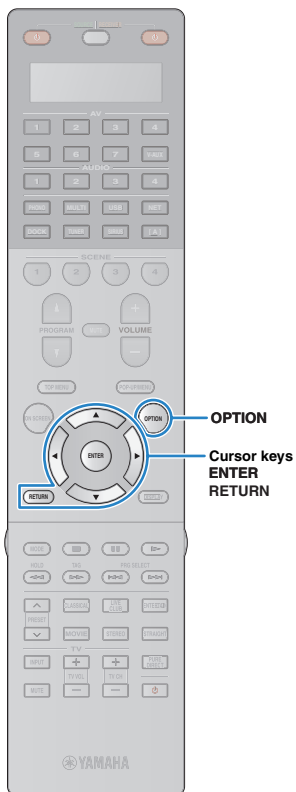


- Status indicators**  
Display the current shuffle/repeat settings (p.82) and playback status (play/pause).
- Playback information**  
Displays the artist name, album name, song title and elapsed time. Use the cursor keys to select information to be scrolled.
- Album image**
- Operation menu**  
Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER to confirm the selection.  
To close the submenu, press RETURN.

Menu	Submenu	Function
	▶	Resumes playback from pause.
	■	Stops playback.
<b>Play Control</b>	■ ■	Stops playback temporarily.
	⏮ ⏭	Skips forward/backward.
<b>Browse</b>		Moves to the browse screen.
<b>Screen Off</b>		Closes the screen display and shows the background. Press one of the menu operation keys to redisplay it.



- You can also use the external device operation keys (▶, ■, ■ ■, ⏮, ⏭) on the remote control to control playback.
- You can also use a DLNA-compatible Digital Media Controller (DMC) to control playback. For details, see "DMC Control" (p.100).



## ■ Shuffle/repeat settings

You can configure the shuffle/repeat settings for playback of PC music contents.



- The shuffle/repeat settings are shared by USB and network sources.




**1** When “PC” is selected as the input source, press **OPTION**.

**2** Use the cursor keys to select “Shuffle” (Shuffle) or “Repeat” (Repeat) and press **ENTER**.

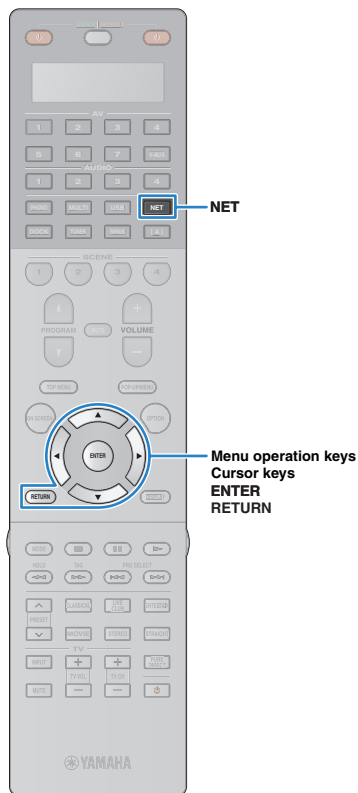


- To return to the previous screen during menu operations, press RETURN.
- Texts in parentheses denote indications on the front display.

**3** Use the cursor keys (</>) to select a setting and press **ENTER**.

Item	Setting	Function
<b>Shuffle (Shuffle)</b>	Off (Off)	Turns off the shuffle function.
	On (On)	Plays back songs in the current album (folder) in random order. “  ” appears in the TV screen.
<b>Repeat (Repeat)</b>	Off (Off)	Turns off the repeat function.
	Single (Single)	Plays back the current song repeatedly. “  ” appears in the TV screen.
	All (All)	Plays back all songs in the current album (folder) repeatedly. “  ” appears in the TV screen.

**4** To exit from the menu, press **OPTION**.



## Listening to Internet radio

You can listen to Internet radio stations using the vTuner Internet radio station database service particularly customized for this unit, providing a database of numerous radio stations in the world.



- To use this function, this unit must be connected to the Internet (p.40). You can check whether the network parameters (IP address, etc.) are properly assigned to this unit in "Network" (p.124) in the "Information".
- This service may be discontinued without notice.
- Some Internet radio stations may not be played.

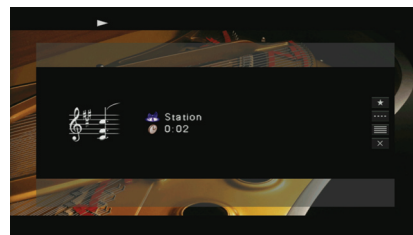
### 1 Press NET repeatedly to select "NET RADIO" as the input source.

The browse screen is displayed on the TV.



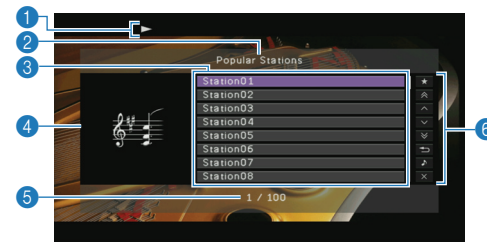
### 2 Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER.

If an Internet radio station is selected, playback starts and the playback screen is displayed.



- To return to the previous screen, press RETURN.
- You can register your favorite Internet radio stations as shortcuts (p.91) and access them directly by selecting the shortcut numbers.

## Browse screen



#### 1 Playback indicator

#### 2 List name

#### 3 Contents list

Displays the list of Internet radio contents. Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER to confirm the selection.

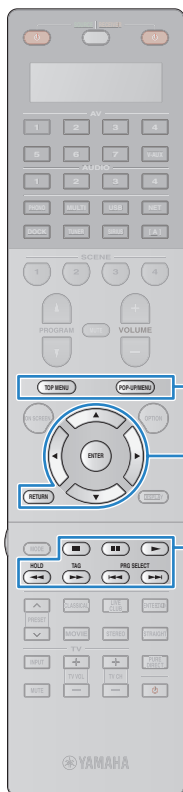
#### 4 Station art

#### 5 Item number/total

#### 6 Operation menu

Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER to confirm the selection.

Menu	Function
<b>Bookmark On</b>	Adds the station selected in the list to "Bookmarks".
<b>1 Page Up</b>	Moves to the previous/next page of the list.
<b>1 Page Down</b>	Moves to the previous/next page of the list.
<b>10 Pages Up</b>	Moves to 10 pages forward/backward.
<b>10 Pages Down</b>	Moves to 10 pages forward/backward.
<b>Return</b>	Returns to the higher-level list.
<b>Now Playing</b>	Moves to the playback screen.
<b>Screen Off</b>	Closes the screen display and shows the background. Press one of the menu operation keys to redisplay it.



External device operation keys

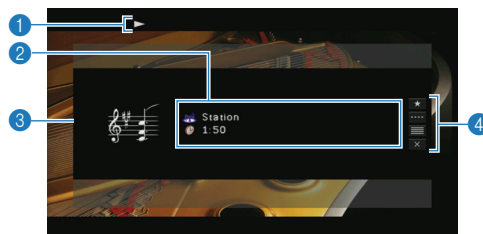
Menu operation keys  
Cursor keys  
ENTER  
RETURN

External device operation keys



- By adding your favorite Internet radio stations to “Bookmarks”, you can access to them quickly from “Bookmarks”. To remove stations from “Bookmarks”, select the station in “Bookmarks” and then “Bookmark Off”.
- You can also register your favorite Internet radio stations by accessing the following website with the web browser on your PC. To use this feature, you need the vTuner ID of this unit and your e-mail address to create your personal account. You can check the vTunerID (MAC address of this unit) in the “Network” screen (p.124) in the “Information” menu.  
<http://yradio.vtuner.com/>

## ■ Playback screen



### 1 Playback indicators

### 2 Playback information

Displays the station name and elapsed time.

### 3 Station art

### 4 Operation menu

Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER to confirm the selection.

To close the submenu, press RETURN.

Menu	Submenu	Function
<b>Bookmark On</b>		Adds the current station to “Bookmarks”.
<b>Play Control</b>	■	Stops playback.
<b>Browse</b>		Moves to the browse screen.
<b>Screen Off</b>		Closes the screen display and shows the background. Press one of the menu operation keys to redisplay it.



- You can also use the external device operation keys (▶, ■) on the remote control to control playback.



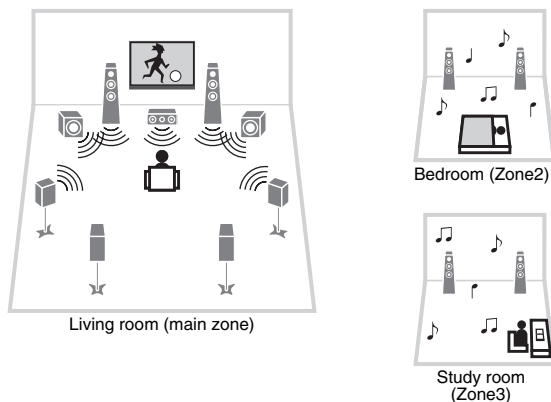
## Playing back music in multiple rooms (multi-zone)

The multi-zone function allows you to play back separate input sources in the room where this unit is installed (main zone) and other rooms (Zone2 and Zone3).

For example, while you are watching a TV in the living room (main zone), another person can listen to radio in the bedroom (Zone2), and another can listen to PC music in the study room (Zone3).



- Since there are many possible ways to use this unit in a multi-zone configuration, we recommend that you consult with your nearest authorized Yamaha dealer or service center about the multi-zone connections that best meet your requirements.



- Only analog audio signals (including radio, USB and network sources) can be output to Zone2 or Zone3. To listen to playback sounds of an external device in Zone2 or Zone3, you need to connect the device to the AUDIO jacks of this unit with a stereo pin cable. The party mode (p.90) allows you to enjoy main zone sources in all zones simultaneously regardless of input audio signal types.

## Preparing for Zone2 or Zone3

Connect devices to be set in Zone2 or Zone3 to this unit. The connection method varies depending on an amplifier to use (this unit or external amplifier).

### Caution

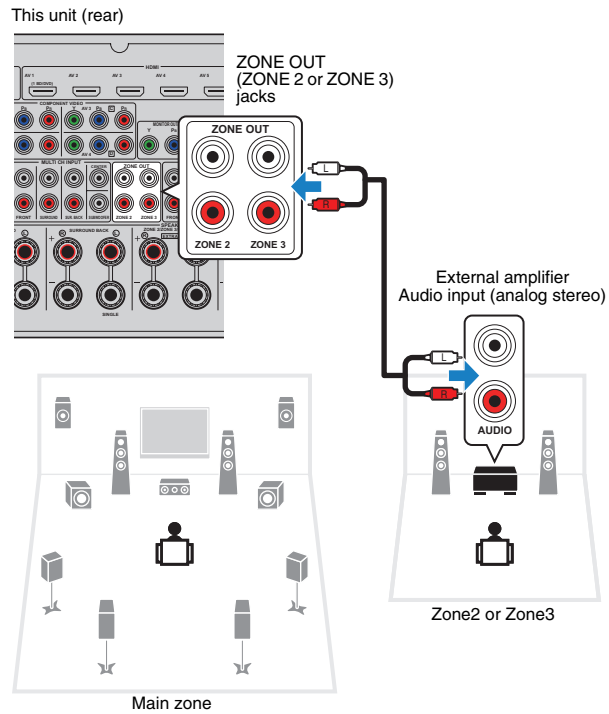
- Remove the power cable of this unit from an AC wall outlet before connecting speakers or an external amplifier.
- Be careful that the core of the speaker cable does not touch anything or come into contact with the metal areas of this unit. This may damage this unit or the speakers. If the speaker cables short circuit, "CHECK SP WIRES" will appear on the front display when this unit is turned on.

## Using the internal amplifier of this unit

Connect the speakers placed in Zone2 or Zone3 to this unit with speaker cables. For details, see "Connecting Zone2/3 speakers" (p.26).

## ■ Using an external amplifier

Connect the external amplifier placed in Zone2 or Zone3 to this unit with a stereo pin cable.



## ■ Connecting a zone video monitor

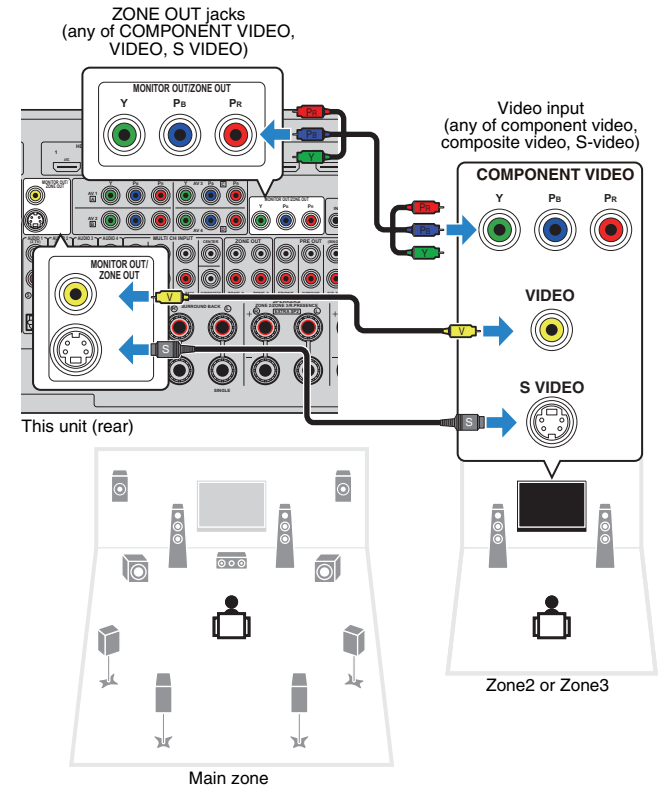
Connect a zone video monitor to watch videos at Zone2 or Zone3. Depending on the video input jacks available on your video monitor, choose one of the video connection methods.



- The following features are also available for Zone2 or Zone3.
  - Navigating contents on the browse screen or viewing information in the playback screen
  - Configuring "Tone Control", "Shuffle" and "Repeat" in the "Option" menu (p.95)



- The video conversion between the analog video jacks does not work for multi-zone video output. To watch videos played back on a video device on the zone video monitor, you need to connect the video monitor to this unit in the same way as the video device.



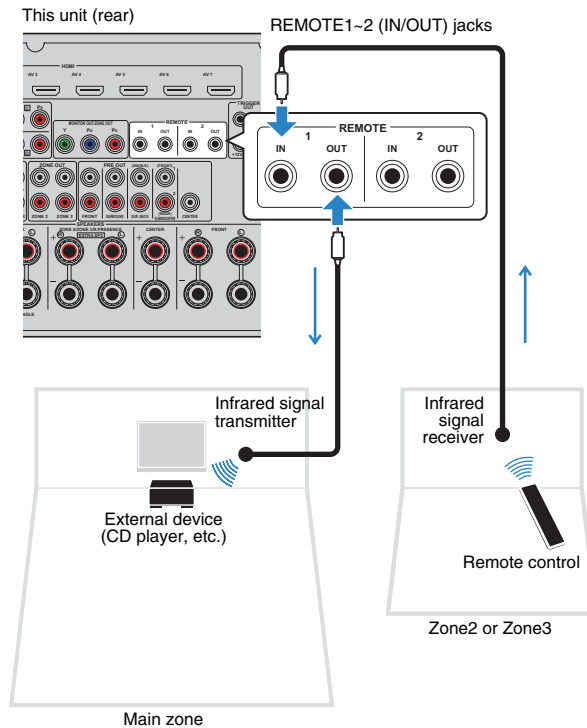
To assign the ZONE OUT jacks to the zone video monitor, select the corresponding zone in "Monitor Out Assign" (p.119) in the "Setup" menu.

## ■ Operating this unit from another room (remote connection)

By connecting an infrared signal receiver/emitter to the REMOTE1 (IN/OUT) or REMOTE2 (IN/OUT) jacks of this unit, you can operate this unit and external devices from Zone2 or Zone3 with the supplied remote control.

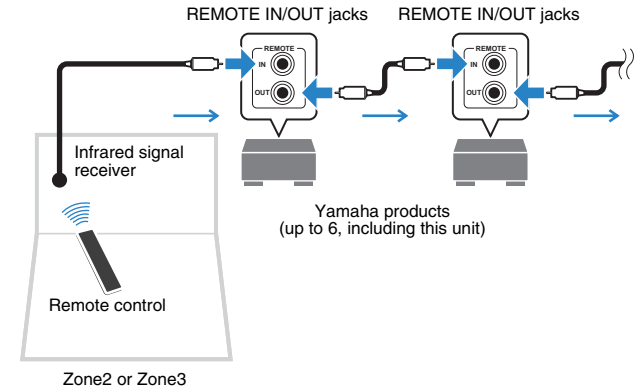


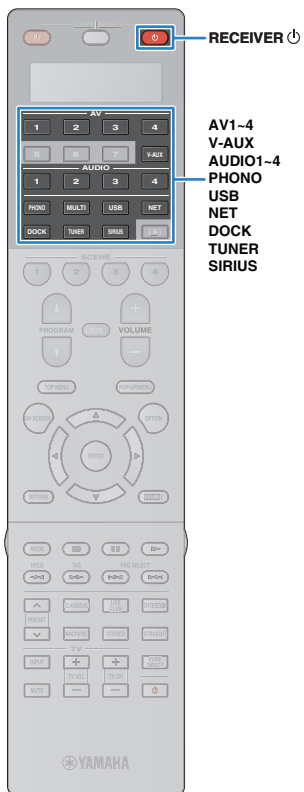
- To operate external devices with the supplied remote control, register a remote control code for each device in advance (p.128).



## □ Remote connections between Yamaha products

If you are using Yamaha products that support remote connections like this unit, an infrared signal transmitter is unnecessary. You can transmit remote control signals by connecting the REMOTE IN/OUT jacks with monaural mini-jack cables and an infrared signal receiver.





## Controlling Zone2 or Zone3

### 1 Press ZONE repeatedly to select a zone.

Each time you press the key, the zone to be operated switches.

Selected zone (turns off when main zone is selected)



### 2 Press RECEIVER .

Each time you press the key, audio output to the selected zone is enabled or disabled.

When audio output to any of zones is enabled, the corresponding zone indicator lights up in the front display.

### 3 Use the following keys to select an input source.

**AV1~4:** AV1~4 (AUDIO) jacks

**V-AUX:** VIDEO AUX (AUDIO) jacks (on the front panel)

**AUDIO1~4:** AUDIO1~4 (AUDIO) jacks

**PHONO:** PHONO jacks

**USB:** USB jack (on the front panel)

**NET:** NETWORK jack (press repeatedly to select a desired network source)

**DOCK:** DOCK jack

**TUNER:** FM/AM radio

**SIRIUS:** SIRIUS jack



- You cannot select USB and network sources exclusively for each zone. For example, if you select "PC" for Zone2 when "USB" is selected for the main zone, the input source for the main zone also switches to "PC".

### 4 Start playback on the external device, or select a radio station.

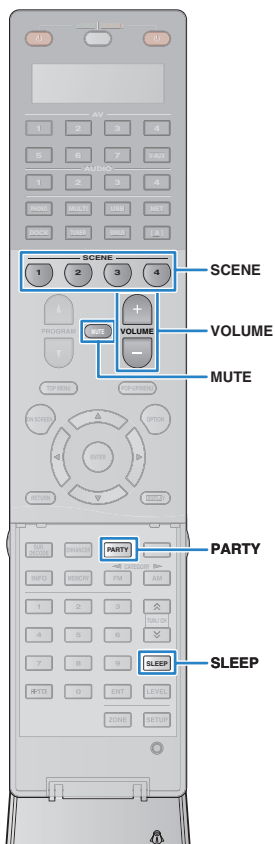
Refer to the instruction manual of the external device.

For details on the following operations, see the corresponding pages.

- Listening to FM/AM radio (p.59)
- Listening to SIRIUS Satellite Radio (p.64)
- Playing back iPod music (p.70)
- Playing back music via Bluetooth (p.75)
- Playing back music stored on a USB storage device (p.77)
- Playing back music stored on PCs (p.80)
- Listening to Internet radio (p.83)

#### Caution

- To avoid unexpected noise, never play back DTS-CDs in Zone2 or Zone3.



## ■ Other operations for Zone2 or Zone3

The following functions are also available when audio output to the zone you want to operate is enabled.

### Adjusting the volume

Press VOLUME or MUTE.

### Selecting the input source and settings at once (SCENE)

Press SCENE.



- To register the current settings (input source, volume and tone control) to a scene, hold down the desired SCENE key until “SET Complete” appears on the front display.

### Setting the sleep timer

Press SLEEP repeatedly to set the time (120 min, 90 min, 60 min, 30 min, off).

### Adjusting the high-/low-frequency range of sounds

- ① Press ZONE CONTROL on the front panel to select the zone you want to operate.
- ② Press TONE/BALANCE repeatedly to select “Treble” or “Bass”.
- ③ Press PROGRAM to make an adjustment.

#### Setting range

-10.0dB ~ +10.0dB (2.0dB steps)

#### Default

0.0dB

### Adjusting the front speaker balance

- ① Press ZONE CONTROL on the front panel to select the zone you want to operate.
- ② Press TONE/BALANCE repeatedly to select “Balance”.
- ③ Press PROGRAM to make an adjustment.

## ■ Enjoying main zone sources in all zones (party mode)

The party mode allows you to enjoy main zone sources in all zones simultaneously. During the party mode, stereo playback is automatically selected for all zones. Utilize this function when you want to play back main sources as background music in a home party, etc.

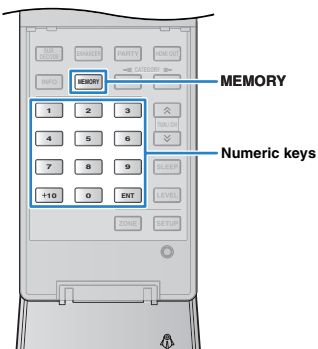
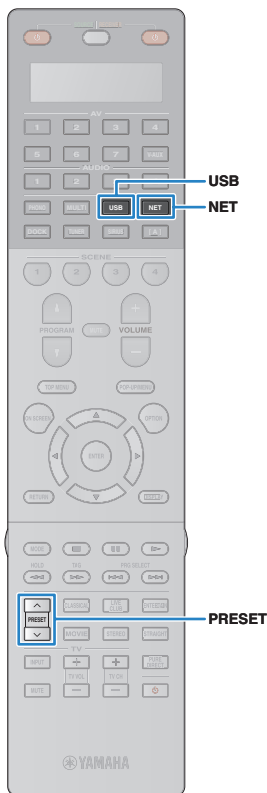
### 1 Press PARTY.

Each time you press the key, the party mode is turned on or off.

When the party mode is turned on, “PARTY” lights up in the front display.



- You can select the zones to be included in the party mode in “Party Mode Set” (p.119) in the “Setup” menu.



## Useful functions

### Registering favorite items (shortcut)

You can register up to 40 favorite USB and network contents as shortcuts and access them directly by selecting the shortcut numbers.



- You can also use the "Bookmarks" feature to register Internet radio stations (p.83).

### Registering an item

Select a desired item and register it to a shortcut number.

**1 Play back a song or a radio station to be registered.**

**2 Press MEMORY.**



Shortcut number (flashes)



- To change a shortcut number to which the item will be registered, use PRESET or numeric keys to select the shortcut number after step 2.



"Empty" (not in use) or item currently registered

**3 To confirm the registration, press MEMORY.**

### Recalling a registered item

Recall a registered item by selecting the shortcut number.

**1 Press NET or USB.**

**2 Press PRESET repeatedly to select a desired item.**

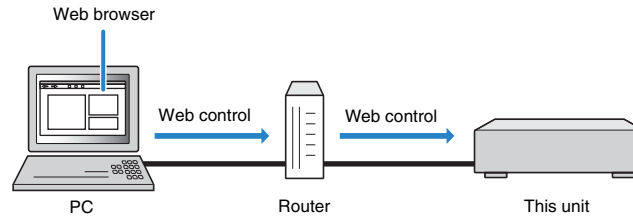
You can also enter a shortcut number (01 to 40) directly by using the numeric keys.



- "No Presets" appears when no items are registered.
- "Empty" appears when a preset number not in use is entered.
- The registered item cannot be recalled in the following cases.
  - A USB storage device which contains the registered item is not connected to this unit.
  - A PC which contains the registered item is turned off or not connected to the network.
  - The registered network content is temporarily unavailable or out of service.
  - The registered item (file) has been deleted or moved to another location.
- When you register music files stored on a USB storage device or a PC, this unit memorizes the relative position of the music files in the folder. If you have added or deleted any music files to or from the folder, this unit may not recall the music file correctly. In such cases, register the items again.

## Controlling this unit from the web browser (web control)

You can control this unit with the web control screen displayed in the web browser.



- To use this function, this unit and your PC must be connected to the network properly (p.40).
- Some security software installed on your PC may block the access of this unit to your PC. In such cases, configure the security software appropriately.
- We recommend using Internet Explorer 7.x or 8.x as a web browser.

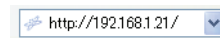


- If you set "Network Standby" (p.93) to "On", you can display the web control screen even when this unit is in standby mode.
- You can limit access to this unit from the network devices (PCs, etc.) with the MAC address filter (p.93).

### 1 Start the web browser.

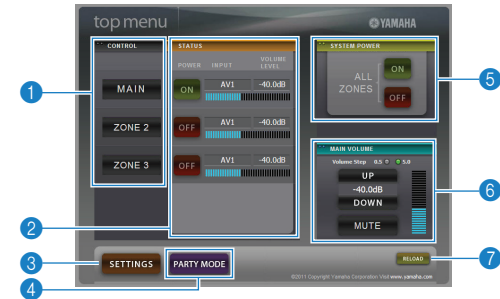
### 2 Enter the IP address of this unit in the address bar of the web browser.

(Example)



- You can check the IP address in "Network" (p.124) in the "Information" menu.
- By adding the IP address of this unit to the bookmark of the browser, you will be able to open it without entering the IP address from the next time. However, the IP address of this unit may change if you are using a DHCP server.

## Top menu screen



### 1 CONTROL

Moves to the control screen for the selected zone.

### 2 STATUS

Turns on/off the power for each zone, or displays the input source and volume set for each zone.

### 3 SETTINGS

Moves to the settings screen.

### 4 PARTY MODE

Turns on/off the party mode (p.90).

### 5 SYSTEM POWER

Turns on/off the power for all zones.

### 6 MAIN VOLUME

Adjusts the volume or mutes the audio output for the main zone. You can also switch the step for the volume adjustment.

### 7 RELOAD

Reloads the current status of this unit.

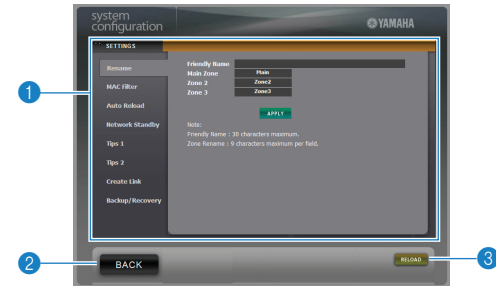


## ■ Control screen



- 1 **PLAY INFO**  
Selects an input source or controls playback for the selected zone.
- 2 **TOP MENU**  
Moves to the top menu screen.
- 3 **SCENE**  
Select a scene for the selected zone.
- 4 **POWER**  
Turns on/off the power for the selected zone.
- 5 **VOLUME**  
Adjusts the volume or mutes the audio output for the selected zone. You can also switch the step for the volume adjustment.
- 6 **RELOAD**  
Reloads the current status of this unit.

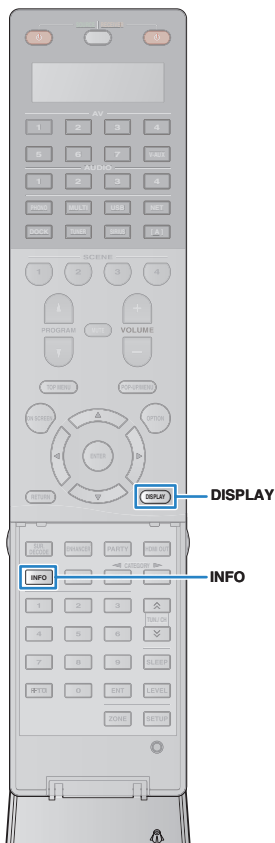
## ■ Settings screen



- 1 **Rename**  
Edits the friendly name (name for this unit in the network) or the name of each zone (p.120). Click "APPLY" to apply the changes to this unit.
- MAC Filter**  
Sets the MAC address filter (p.118) to limit access to this unit from the network devices. Click "APPLY" to apply the changes to this unit.
- Auto Reload**  
Enables/disables automatic reloading. When "Auto Reload" is "On" (enabled), the web control screen reloads the status of this unit every 5 seconds.
- Network Standby**  
Enables/disables the network standby function (p.118).
- Tips 1/2**  
Displays the tips for use of the web control.
- Create Link**  
Creates a shortcut link to the desired control screen.
- Backup/Recovery**  
Creates backup of the settings of this unit on the PC, or restores the settings from the backup.
- 2 **BACK**  
Moves to the top menu screen.
- 3 **RELOAD**  
Reloads the current status of this unit.

### Note

- Do not operate this unit during the recovery process (restoring the settings). Otherwise, the settings may not be restored correctly. When the recovery finishes, click "OK" to set this unit to standby mode.
- The backup does not contain user information (user account, password, etc.) or unit-specific information (MAC address, IP address, etc.).



## Viewing the current status

### ■ Switching information on the front display

#### 1 Press INFO.

Each time you press the key, the display item switches.



Item name

About 3 seconds later, the corresponding information appears.



Information



- Available items vary depending on the selected input source. Also, the display item can be applied separately to each input source group.

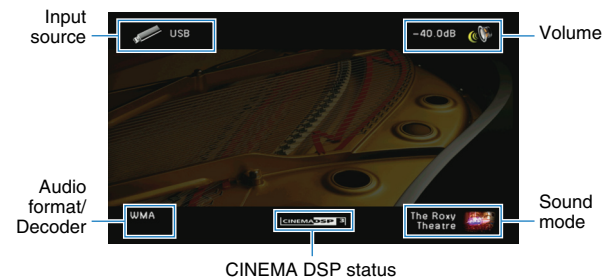
Input source group	Item
AV1~7 V-AUX AUDIO1~4 PHONO	DSP Program (sound mode name), Audio Decoder (decoder name)
TUNER	Frequency (frequency), DSP Program (sound mode name), Audio Decoder (decoder name)  * When tuning into an HD Radio station, HD Radio data is also available (p.61).
SIRIUS (SIRIUS Satellite Radio)	Artist/Song (artist name/song title), Composer (composer name), Antenna level (antenna reception level), DSP Program (sound mode name), Audio Decoder (decoder name)

DOCK	Song (song title), Artist (artist name), Album (album name), DSP Program (sound mode name), Audio Decoder (decoder name)  * When using iPod wireless system, Bluetooth receiver, or during simple play: DSP Program (sound mode name), Audio Decoder (decoder name)
PC USB	Song (song title), Artist (artist name), Album (album name), DSP Program (sound mode name), Audio Decoder (decoder name)  * When iPod is connected via USB, the display item switches in the same manner as "DOCK".
NET RADIO	Station (station name), DSP Program (sound mode name), Audio Decoder (decoder name)

### ■ Viewing the status information on the TV

#### 1 Press DISPLAY.

The following information is displayed on the TV.



#### 2 To close the information display, press DISPLAY.

## Configuring settings in accordance with a playback source (Option menu)

You can configure the playback-related settings in accordance with a playback source. Since this menu is operational on the front panel (or on the TV screen), you can easily configure the settings during playback.

### 1 Press OPTION.



Front display



TV screen

### 2 Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER.



- To return to the previous screen during menu operations, press RETURN.

### 3 Use the cursor keys (◀/▶) to select a setting and press ENTER.

### 4 To exit from the menu, press OPTION.

## Option menu items



- Available items vary depending on the selected input source.
- Texts in parentheses denote indications on the front display.

Item	Function	Page
<b>Tone Control (Tone Control)</b>	Adjusts the high-frequency range and low-frequency range of sounds.	96
<b>Adaptive DRC (Adaptive DRC)</b>	Sets whether dynamic range (from maximum to minimum) is adjusted automatically in conjunction with adjusting the volume level.	96
<b>CINEMA DSP 3D Mode (CINEMA DSP 3D)</b>	Enables/disables CINEMA DSP 3D.	96
<b>Dialogue Lift (Dialogue Lift)</b>	Adjusts the vertical position of center sound when front presence speakers are used.	96
<b>Extended Surround (EXTD Surround)</b>	Selects the 5.1 to 7.1-channel signal playback method when surround back speakers are used.	97
<b>Volume Trim (Volume Trim)</b>	Corrects volume differences between input sources.	97
<b>Enhancer (Enhancer)</b>	Enables/disables Compressed Music Enhancer.	97
<b>Video Adjustment (Video Adjust)</b>	Selects a video adjustment setting from presets.	97
<b>Audio Select (Audio Select)</b>	Selects the audio input jack to use when more than one audio connection is made for one input source.	97
<b>Shuffle (Shuffle)</b>	Configures the shuffle setting for the iPod (p.74), USB storage device (p.79) or PC (p.82).	—
<b>Repeat (Repeat)</b>	Configures the repeat setting for the iPod (p.74), USB storage device (p.79) or PC (p.82).	—
<b>Connect/Disconnect (Connect/Disconnect)</b>	Establishes/terminates a wireless connection between your Bluetooth component and the Bluetooth receiver.	76
<b>Pairing (Pairing)</b>	Performs pairing of your Bluetooth component and the Bluetooth receiver.	75

## ■ Tone Control (Tone Control)

Adjusts the high-frequency range (Treble) and low-frequency range (Bass) of speaker sounds. When connecting headphones, you can adjust high-frequency range and low-frequency range of sounds output from headphones.

### Choices

Treble (Treble), Bass (Bass)

### Setting range

-6.0dB ~ Bypass (Bypass) ~ +6.0dB \*0.5dB steps

### Default

Bypass (Bypass)



- If you set the balance extremely off, sounds may not match those from other channels well.

### Adjusting with the front panel controls

- ① Press TONE/BALANCE to select “Treble” or “Bass”.
- ② Press PROGRAM to make an adjustment.

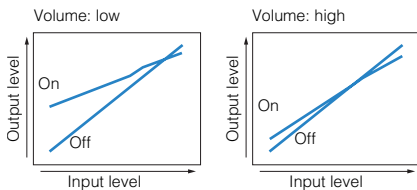
## ■ Adaptive DRC (Adaptive DRC)

Sets whether dynamic range (from maximum to minimum) is adjusted automatically in conjunction with adjusting the volume level. When it is set to “On”, it is useful for listening to playback at low volume at night.

### Settings

On (On)	Adjusts the dynamic range automatically.
Off (Off) (default)	Does not adjust the dynamic range automatically.

If “On” is selected, the dynamic range becomes narrow at a low volume, and becomes wide at a high volume.



## ■ CINEMA DSP 3D Mode (CINEMA DSP 3D)

Enables/disables CINEMA DSP 3D. If this function is set to “On”, CINEMA DSP 3D functions according to the selected sound programs (except 2ch Stereo and 9ch Stereo).

### Settings

On (On) (default)	Enables CINEMA DSP 3D.
Off (Off)	Disables CINEMA DSP 3D.

## ■ Dialogue Lift (Dialogue Lift)

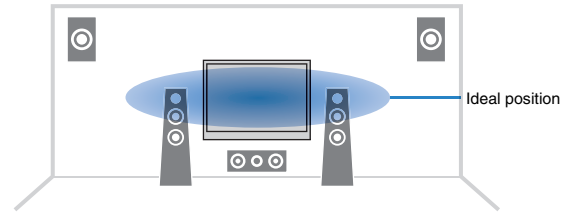
Adjusts the vertical position of center sound such as dialogues when front presence speakers are used. If dialogues are heard from a position lower than the TV screen, adjust this setting to raise the position.

### Setting range

0~5 (higher raises the position)

### Default

0



## Extended Surround (EXTD Surround)

Selects how to play back 5.1- to 7.1-channel sources when surround back speakers are used.

### Settings

Auto (Auto) (default)	Automatically selects the most suitable decoder if a flag for reproducing surround back channel is present, and reproduces the signals in 6.1- or 7.1-channel. When the DTS or DTS-HD signal is input, the unit reproduces the signal in 7.1-channel regardless of a flag for surround back channel.
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PLIIx Movie <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PLIIxMo	Always reproduces signals in 7.1-channel using the Dolby Pro Logic IIx Movie decoder. This setting is available only when two surround back speakers are connected.
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PLIIx Music <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PLIIxMu	Always reproduces signals in 6.1- or 7.1-channel using the Dolby Pro Logic IIx Music decoder. This setting is available only when one or two surround back speakers are connected.
EX/ES (EX/ES)	Automatically selects the most suitable decoder, and reproduces signals in 6.1-channel.
Off (Off)	Always reproduces signals in original channels.

## Volume Trim (Volume Trim)

Corrects volume differences between input sources. If you are bothered by volume differences when switching between input sources, use this function to correct it.



- This setting is applied separately to each input source.

### Setting range

-6.0dB ~ +6.0dB (0.5dB steps)

### Default

0.0dB

## Enhancer (Enhancer)

Enables/disables Compressed Music Enhancer (p.58).



- This setting is applied separately to each input source.

### Settings

Off (Off)	Disables Compressed Music Enhancer.
On (On)	Enables Compressed Music Enhancer.

### Default

TUNER, DOCK, (network sources), USB: On (On)

Others: Off (Off)

## Video Adjustment (Video Adjust)

Selects a video adjustment setting from presets you have configured in "Adjustment" (p.115) in the "Setup" menu.



- This setting is applied separately to each input source.

### Settings

1~6

## Audio Select (Audio Select)

Selects the audio input jack to use when more than one audio connection is made for one input source.



- This setting is applied separately to each input source.

### Settings

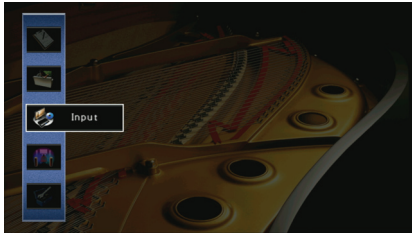
Auto (Auto) (default)	Automatically selects the audio input jack in the following priority order. 1. HDMI input 2. Digital input (COAXIAL or OPTICAL) 3. Analog input (AUDIO)
HDMI (HDMI)	Always selects HDMI input. No sounds are produced when no signals are input through the HDMI jack.
Coax/Opt (Coax/Opt)	Always selects digital input (COAXIAL or OPTICAL). No sounds are produced when no signals are input through the COAXIAL or OPTICAL jack.
Analog (Analog)	Always selects analog input (AUDIO). No sounds are produced when no signals are input through the AUDIO jacks.

# CONFIGURATIONS

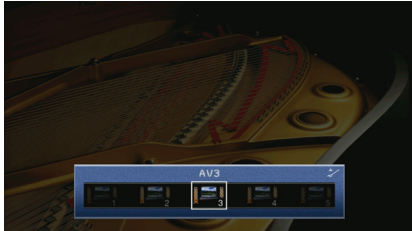
## Configuring input sources (Input menu)

You can change the input source settings using the TV screen.

- 1 Press ON SCREEN.
- 2 Use the cursor keys to select “Input” and press ENTER.



- 3 Use the cursor keys (◀/▶) to select an input source to be configured and press the cursor key (△).

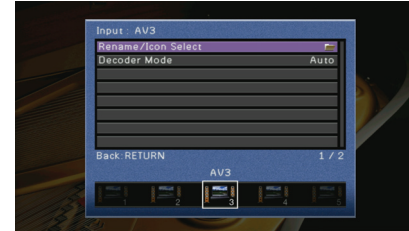


The input source of this unit also changes.



- You can still switch the input source by using cursor keys (◀/▶) after step 3.

- 4 Use the cursor keys (△/▽) to select an item and press ENTER.



- To return to the previous screen during menu operations, press RETURN.

- 5 Use the cursor keys to select a setting and press ENTER.

- 6 To exit from the menu, press ON SCREEN.

## Input menu items



- Available items vary depending on the selected input source.

Item	Function	Page
Rename/Icon Select	Changes the input source name and icon.	99
Decoder Mode	Sets the format of digital audio playback to DTS.	99
Standby Charge	Selects whether to charge the iPod when this unit is in standby mode.	99
iPod Interlock	Selects whether to control this unit in conjunction with iPod operations.	99
Video Out	Selects a video to be output with the audio input source.	100
DMC Control	Selects whether to allow a DLNA-compatible Digital Media Controller (DMC) to control playback.	100

## Rename/Icon Select

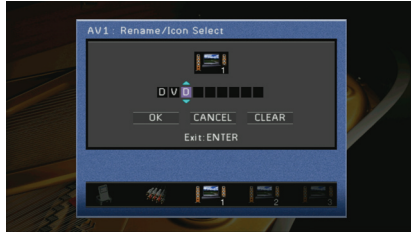
Changes the input source name and icon displayed on the front display or TV screen.

### Input sources

AV1~7, V-AUX, AUDIO1~4, PHONO, USB, DOCK, MULTI CH

### Setup procedure

- 1 Use the cursor keys (</>) to select an icon and press the cursor key (▽).
- 2 Press ENTER, use the cursor keys to rename, and then press ENTER again.



- 3 Use the cursor keys to select "OK" and press ENTER.



- To clear the entry, select "CLEAR".

- 4 To exit from the menu, press ON SCREEN.

## Decoder Mode

Sets the format of digital audio playback to DTS.

For example, if this unit does not detect DTS audio and outputs noise, set "Decoder Mode" to "DTS".

### Input sources

AV1~7, V-AUX, AUDIO1~4 (available only when any audio digital input jack is assigned)

### Settings

Auto (default)	Automatically selects an audio format to match the input audio signal.
DTS	Selects DTS only. (Other audio signals are not reproduced.)

## Standby Charge

Selects whether to charge the iPod connected to the iPod dock or iPod wireless system when this unit is in standby mode.

### Input sources

DOCK (iPod)

### Settings

On (default)	Charges the iPod even when this unit is in standby mode.
Off	Does not charge the iPod when this unit is in standby mode.

## iPod Interlock

Selects whether to control this unit in conjunction with operations of the iPod connected to the iPod wireless system.

### Input sources

DOCK (iPod)



- This function is available only when an iPod wireless system is connected to this unit.

### Power & Input

Selects whether to control the power and input source selection of this unit in conjunction with iPod operations.

### Settings

On (default)	Enables power and input interlocking controls. When you start playback of the iPod, this unit turns on and "DOCK" is selected as the input source. When you stop playback, this unit enters standby mode after a short time.
Off	Disables power and input interlocking controls.



- When "Power & Input" is set to "On", the iPod connected to the iPod wireless system is charged regardless of the "Standby Charge" setting (p.99).

### Volume

Selects whether to control the volume of this unit in conjunction with iPod operations.

### Settings

On (default)	Enables volume interlocking controls. When you adjust the iPod volume, the volume of the unit is also adjusted.
Off	Disables volume interlocking control.

## Video Out

Selects a video to be output with the audio input source.

### Input sources

TUNER, Sirius Satellite Radio, (network sources), USB, MULTI CH

### Settings

Off (default)	Does not output videos.
AV1~7, V-AUX	Outputs videos input through the corresponding video input jacks.

## DMC Control

Selects whether to allow DLNA-compatible Digital Media Controller (DMC) to control playback.

### Input source

PC

### Settings

Disable	Does not allow DMCs to control playback.
Enable (default)	Allows DMCs to control playback.

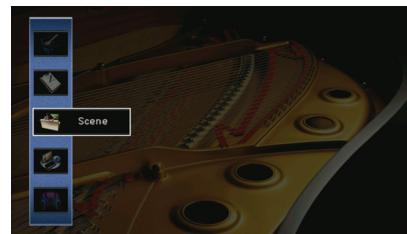


- A Digital Media Controller (DMC) is a device that can control other network devices through the network. When this function is enabled, you can control playback of this unit from DMCs (Windows Media Player 12, etc.) on the same network.

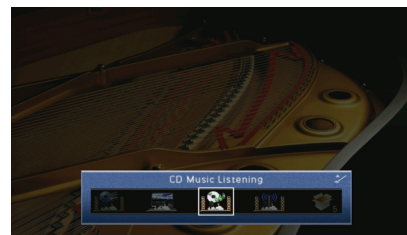
## Configuring the SCENE function (Scene menu)

You can change the settings of the SCENE function (p.52) using the TV screen.

- 1 Press ON SCREEN.
- 2 Use the cursor keys to select “Scene” and press ENTER.



- 3 Use the cursor keys (◀/▶) to select a scene to be configured and press the cursor key (△).



- You can still switch the scene by using cursor keys (◀/▶) after step 3.

- 4 Use the cursor keys (△/▽) to select an item and press ENTER.





**5** Use the cursor keys and ENTER to change the setting.

**6** To exit from the menu, press ON SCREEN.

## Scene menu items

Item	Function	Page
Save	Registers the settings currently applied to this unit to the selected scene.	101
Load	Loads the settings registered to the selected scene. You can also configure the SCENE link playback setting, select items to be included as the scene assignments, or view the settings currently assigned to the selected scene.	101
Rename/Icon Select	Changes the scene name and icon.	102
Reset	Restores the default settings for the selected scene.	102

### Save

Registers the settings currently applied to this unit (input source, sound program, etc.) to the selected scene.



- If you have changed the input assignment for a scene, you also need to change the external device assigned to the corresponding SCENE key (p.53).

### Load

Loads the settings registered to the selected scene. Select "DETAIL" to configure the SCENE link playback setting, select items to be included as the scene assignments, or view the settings currently assigned to the selected scene.

### Device Control

Enables to start playback of external devices connected to this unit via HDMI or a Yamaha product connected to one of the REMOTE (OUT) jacks, in conjunction with a scene selection (SCENE link playback)

#### Settings

Off	Disables the SCENE link playback function.
HDMI Control	Enables SCENE link playback using HDMI Control signals. Select this if HDMI Control-compatible device (BD/DVD players, etc.) is connected to this unit via HDMI. It also turns on the HDMI Control-compatible TV concurrently.
IR: Yamaha BD/DVD 1	Enables SCENE link playback using remote control signals. Select this if a Yamaha BD/DVD player is connected to one of the REMOTE (OUT) jacks.
IR: Yamaha BD/DVD 2	Enables SCENE link playback using remote control signals. Select this if a Yamaha BD/DVD player is connected to one of the REMOTE (OUT) jacks and "IR: Yamaha BD/DVD 1" does not work properly.
IR: Yamaha CD	Enables SCENE link playback using remote control signals. Select this if a Yamaha CD player is connected to one of the REMOTE (OUT) jacks.

#### Default

SCENE1 (BD/DVD), SCENE2 (TV): HDMI Control  
SCENE3 (CD): IR: Yamaha CD  
SCENE4 (RADIO), SCENE5~12: Off



- To control playback of an HDMI Control-compatible device by SCENE link playback, you need to set "HDMI Control" in the "Setup" menu to "On" and perform the HDMI Control link setup (p.150).

## □ Detail

Selects items to be included as the scene assignments. You can also view the settings currently assigned to the selected scene.

To include items as the scene assignments, use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER to check the box (or uncheck the box to exclude).

For example, if you often adjust the volume while watching TV but listen to radio with low volume at night, exclude “Volume” from the assignments for SCENE2 (TV) and include “Volume” in the assignments for SCENE4 (RADIO).



### Choices

Input	Input (p.51), Audio Select (p.97)
HDMI Output	HDMI Output (p.51)
Mode	Sound Program (p.54), Pure Direct Mode (p.113)
Sound	Tone Control (p.96), Adaptive DRC (p.96), Enhancer (p.58)
Surround	CINEMA DSP 3D Mode (p.96), Dialogue Lift (p.96), Extended Surround (p.97)
Video	Video Processing (p.114), Video Adjustment (p.115)
Volume	Master Volume (p.51)
Lipsync	Lipsync (p.113), Delay (p.113)
Speaker Setup	Setting Pattern (p.109), PEQ Select (p.112)

### Default

Input, HDMI Output, Mode, Sound: selected

Surround, Video, Volume, Lipsync, Speaker Setup: not selected

## ■ Rename/Icon Select

Changes the scene name and icon displayed on the front display or TV screen.

### ■ Setup procedure

- 1 Use the cursor keys (</>) to select an icon and press the cursor key (▽).
- 2 Press ENTER, use the cursor keys to rename, and then press ENTER again.



- 3 Use the cursor keys to select “OK” and press ENTER.



- To clear the entry, select “CLEAR”.

- 4 To exit from the menu, press ON SCREEN.

## ■ Reset

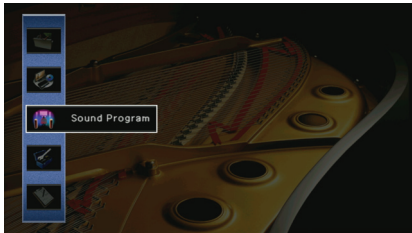
Restores the default settings (p.52) for the selected scene.

## Configuring sound programs/surround decoders (Sound Program menu)

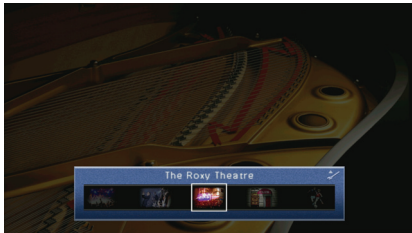
You can change the settings of the sound programs and surround decoders using the TV screen.

**1** Press ON SCREEN.

**2** Use the cursor keys to select “Sound Program” and press ENTER.



**3** Use the cursor keys (◀/▶) to select a sound program to be configured and press the cursor key (△).



- You can still switch the sound program by using cursor keys (◀/▶) after step 3.

**4** Use the cursor keys (△/▽) to select an item and press ENTER.



- To return to the previous screen during menu operations, press RETURN.
- To restore the default settings for the selected sound program, select “Reset”.

**5** Use the cursor keys to select a setting and press ENTER.

**6** To exit from the menu, press ON SCREEN.

## Sound Program menu items



- Available items vary depending on the selected sound program or surround decoder.

### Settings for sound programs

Item	Function	Settings
<b>Decode Type</b>	Selects a surround decoder to be used in combination with the selected sound program.	<input type="checkbox"/> PLIIx Movie ( <input type="checkbox"/> PLII Movie), Neo:6 Cinema
<b>DSP Level</b>	Adjusts the sound field effect level.	-6dB ~ +3dB (default: 0dB) Higher to enhance the sound field effect and lower to reduce.
<b>Initial Delay</b>	Adjusts the delay between the direct sound and presence sound field generation.	1ms ~ 99ms Higher to enhance the delay effect and lower to reduce.
<b>Surround Initial Delay</b>	Adjusts the delay between the direct sound and surround sound field generation.	1ms ~ 49ms Higher to enhance the delay effect and lower to reduce.
<b>Surround Back Initial Delay</b>	Adjusts the delay between the direct sound and surround back sound field generation.	
<b>Room Size</b>	Adjusts the broadening effect of the presence sound field.	0.1 ~ 2.0
<b>Surround Room Size</b>	Adjusts the broadening effect of the surround sound field.	Higher to enhance the broadening effect and lower to reduce.
<b>Surround Back Room Size</b>	Adjusts the broadening effect of the surround back sound field.	
<b>Liveness</b>	Adjusts the loss of the presence sound field.	0 ~ 10
<b>Surround Liveness</b>	Adjusts the loss of the surround sound field.	Higher to enhance the reflectivity and lower to reduce.
<b>Surround Back Liveness</b>	Adjusts the loss of the surround back sound field.	
<b>Reverb Time</b>	Adjust the decay time of the reverberant sound.	1.0s ~ 5.0s Higher to enrich the reverberant sound and lower to have clear sound.

Item	Function	Settings
<b>Reverb Delay</b>	Adjusts the delay between the direct sound and reverberant sound generation.	0 ms ~ 250ms Higher to enhance the delay effect and lower to reduce.
<b>Reverb Level</b>	Adjusts the volume of the reverberant sound.	0% ~ 100% Higher to strengthen the reverberant sound and lower to weaken.

The following items are available when you select "2ch Stereo" or "9ch Stereo".

Sound program	Item	Function	Settings
<b>2ch Stereo</b>	<b>Direct</b>	Selects whether to automatically bypass the DSP and tone control circuits when an analog audio source is played back.	Auto (default), Off Select "Auto" to bypass the circuits (when both "Treble" and "Bass" are set to "Bypass").
	<b>Center Level</b>	Adjusts the volume of the center channel.	
	<b>Surround L Level</b>	Adjusts the volume of the surround left channel.	0% ~ 100% (default: 100%)
	<b>Surround R Level</b>	Adjusts the volume of the surround right channel.	
	<b>Surround Back Level</b>	Adjusts the volume of the surround back channel.	0% ~ 100% (default: 50%)
<b>9ch Stereo</b>	<b>Surround Back L Level</b>	Adjusts the volume of the surround back left channel.	0% ~ 100% (default: 35%)
	<b>Surround Back R Level</b>	Adjusts the volume of the surround back right channel.	
	<b>Front Presence L Level</b>	Adjusts the volume of the front presence left channel.	
	<b>Front Presence R Level</b>	Adjusts the volume of the front presence right channel.	0% ~ 100% (default: 33%)
	<b>Rear Presence L Level</b>	Adjusts the volume of the rear presence left channel.	
	<b>Rear Presence R Level</b>	Adjusts the volume of the rear presence right channel.	



- Available items in "9ch Stereo" vary depending on the speaker system being used.

## ■ Settings for decoders

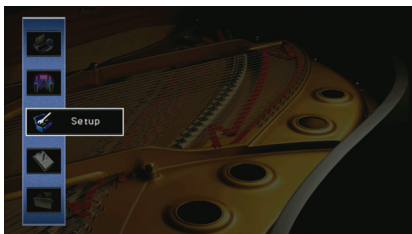
The following items are available when you set "Decode Type" of "Surround Decoder" to "PLIIx Music" or "Neo:6 Music".

Decode Type	Item	Function	Settings
☑ PLIIx Music	<b>Panorama</b>	Adjusts the broadening effect of the front sound field.	Off (default), On Select "On" to wrap front right/left channel sounds around the field and generate a spacious sound field in combination with the surround sound field.
	<b>Center Width</b>	Adjusts the broadening effect of the center sound field.	0 ~ 7 (default: 3) Higher to enhance the broadening effect and lower to reduce (closer to center).
	<b>Dimension</b>	Adjusts the difference in level between the front and surround sound fields.	-3 ~ +3 (default: 0) Higher to strengthen the front sound field and lower to strengthen the surround sound field.
<b>Neo:6 Music</b>	<b>Center Image</b>	Adjusts the center orientation level (broadening effect) of the front sound field.	0.0 ~ 1.0 (default: 0.3) Higher to strengthen the center orientation level (less broadening effect) and lower to weaken (more broadening effect).

## Configuring various functions (Setup menu)

You can configure the various functions of this unit using the TV screen.

- 1 Press ON SCREEN.
- 2 Use the cursor keys to select “Setup” and press ENTER.



- 3 Use the cursor keys (◀/▶) to select a menu.



- 4 Use the cursor keys (Δ/▽) to select an item and press ENTER.



- To return to the previous screen during menu operations, press RETURN.

- 5 Use the cursor keys to select a setting and press ENTER.
- 6 To exit from the menu, press ON SCREEN.

## Setup menu items

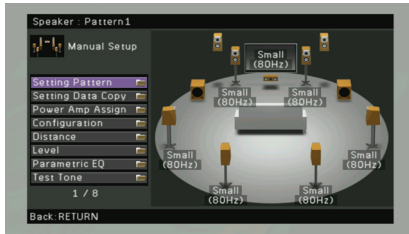
Menu	Item	Function	Page		
Speaker	<b>Auto Setup</b>	Optimizes the speaker settings automatically (YPAO).	44		
	<b>Manual Setup</b>	<b>Setting Pattern</b>	Registers two speaker setting patterns and switches between them.	109	
		<b>Setting Data Copy</b>	Copies the "Setting Pattern" parameters in the specified direction.	109	
		<b>Power Amp Assign</b>	Selects a speaker system.	109	
		<b>Configuration</b>	<b>Front</b>	Selects the size of the front speakers.	110
			<b>Center</b>	Selects whether or not a center speaker is connected and its size.	110
			<b>Surround</b>	Selects whether or not surround speakers are connected and its size.	110
			<b>Surround Back</b>	Selects whether or not surround back speakers are connected and its size.	110
			<b>Front Presence</b>	Selects whether or not front presence speakers are connected.	110
			<b>Rear Presence</b>	Selects whether or not to rear presence speakers are connected.	110
			<b>Subwoofer 1</b>	Selects whether or not a subwoofer is connected to the SUBWOOFER 1 or SUBWOOFER 2 jack and its phase.	111
			<b>Subwoofer 2</b>		
			<b>SWFR Layout</b>	Selects a subwoofer layout when 2 subwoofers are used.	111
			<b>Extra Bass</b>	Sets the speakers to produce the front channel low-frequency components.	111
		<b>Distance</b>	Sets the distance between each speaker and listening position.	111	
		<b>Level</b>	Adjusts the volume of each speaker.	111	
		<b>Parametric EQ</b>	<b>PEQ Select</b>	Selects a type of equalizer to be used.	112
			<b>PEQ Data Copy</b>	Copies the parametric equalizer values acquired with "Auto Setup" to the "Manual" fields for fine adjustment.	112
		<b>Test Tone</b>	Enables/disabled the test tone output.	112	
		Sound	<b>Lipsync</b>	Adjusts the delay between video and audio output.	113
<b>Dynamic Range</b>	Selects the dynamic range adjustment method for bitstream audio (Dolby Digital and DTS signals) playback.		113		
<b>Max Volume</b>	Sets the maximum volume so that sound is not too loud.		113		
<b>Initial Volume</b>	Sets the initial volume for when this receiver is turned on.		113		
<b>Pure Direct Mode</b>	Selects whether to output video signals during the Pure Direct mode.		113		
<b>Adaptive DSP Level</b>	Selects whether to automatically adjust the CINEMA DSP effect level in conjunction with volume adjustments.		114		
Video	<b>Analog to Analog Conversion</b>	Enables/disables the video conversion between the analog video jacks.	114		
	<b>Processing</b>	Enables/disables the video signal processing (resolution, aspect ratio and video adjustments).	114		
HDMI	<b>HDMI Control</b>	Enables/disables HDMI Control. You can also configure the relevant settings (ARC, TV audio input, etc).	116		
	<b>Audio Output</b>	Selects a device to output audio.	117		
	<b>Standby Through</b>	Select whether to output videos/audio (input through HDMI jacks) to the TV when this unit is in standby mode.	117		

Menu	Item	Function	Page		
Network	IP Address	Configures the network parameters (IP address, etc).	117		
	Network Standby	Selects whether or not to turn on this unit by the command from other network devices.	118		
	MAC Address Filter	Sets the MAC address filter to limit access to this unit from other network devices.	118		
Multi Zone	Zone2 Set Zone3 Set	Volume	Enables/disables volume adjustments for Zone2 or Zone3 output.	118	
		Max Volume	Sets the Zone2 or Zone3 maximum volume so that sound is not too loud.	118	
		Initial Volume	Sets the Zone2 or Zone3 initial volume for when this unit is turned on.	118	
		Mono	Switches between stereo and monaural for Zone2 or Zone3 output.	119	
	Monitor Out Assign	Select the zone for which the MONITOR OUT/ZONE OUT jacks are used.	119		
	Party Mode Set	Enables/disables switching to the party mode for each zone.	119		
	Zone Scene Rename	Changes the scene names (for Zone2 or Zone3) displayed on the front display or TV screen.	119		
	Zone Rename	Changes the zone names displayed on the front display or TV screen.	120		
	Auto Power Down	Sets the amount of time for auto-standby.	120		
	Input Assignment	Assigns the COMPONENT VIDEO, COAXIAL and OPTICAL jacks to another input source.	120		
Function	Display Set	Front Panel Display	Dimmer	Adjusts the brightness of the front display.	121
		Scroll	Sets the scrolling manner of the front display.	121	
	Short Message	Selects whether to display short messages on the TV screen when this unit is operated.	121		
	Wall Paper	Selects a wall paper displayed on the TV.	121		
	Trigger Mode	Specifies the condition for the TRIGGER OUT jack to function.	121		
	Trigger Output1	Target Zone	Specifies the zone with which the TRIGGER OUT jack functions synchronized.	121	
	Trigger Output2	Target Source	Specifies the output level of the electronic signal transmitted with each input switching.	122	
	Manual	Switches the output level for electronic signal transmission manually.	122		
	Memory Guard	Prevents accidental changes to the settings.	122		
	Language	Select an on-screen menu language.	122		



## Speaker (Manual Setup)

Configures the speaker settings manually.



### Setting Pattern

Registers two speaker setting patterns and switches between them.

When you configure the following speaker settings, the settings will be memorized in the selected pattern.

- Measurement results (Auto Setup)
- Power Amp Assign
- Configuration
- Distance
- Level
- Parametric EQ

#### Settings

Pattern1 (default), Pattern2



- The setting pattern currently selected is shown at the top of the "Auto Setup" and "Manual Setup" screens.

### Setting Data Copy

Copies the "Setting Pattern" parameters in the specified direction.

#### Choices

Pattern1 > 2	Copies the "Pattern1" parameters to "Pattern2".
Pattern2 > 1	Copies the "Pattern2" parameters to "Pattern1".

## Power Amp Assign

Selects a speaker system.

This unit has 9 built-in amplifiers. You can connect 2 to 11 speakers and up to 2 subwoofers (with built-in amplifier) to create the favorite acoustic space in your room. You can also apply bi-amp connections, channel expansion (using an external power amplifier) or multi-zone configurations to enhance your system.

#### Settings

Basic (default)	Select this when you use the basic speaker configuration (9-channel plus rear presence speakers) (p.16).
7ch +1ZONE	Select this when you use 7-channel speakers in the main zone and Zone2 (or Zone3) speakers (p.24). You can select a zone to be assigned to the EXTRA SP1 jacks (default: Zone2).
9ch +1ZONE	Select this when you use 9-channel speakers in the main zone and Zone3 (or Zone2) speakers (p.24). You can select a zone to be assigned to the EXTRA SP2 jacks (default: Zone3).
7ch +2ZONE	Select this when you use 7-channel speakers in the main zone, plus Zone2 and Zone3 speakers (p.25). You can select a zone to be assigned to the EXTRA SP1 jacks (default: Zone2) and EXTRA SP2 jacks (default: Zone3).
7ch +FRONT+1ZONE	Select this when you use 7-channel speakers plus front channel expansion using an external amplifier in the main zone and Zone3 (or Zone2) speakers (p.23). You can select a zone to be assigned to the EXTRA SP2 jacks (default: Zone3).
5ch +FRONT+2ZONE	Select this when you use 5-channel speakers plus front channel expansion using an external amplifier in the main zone, plus Zone2 and Zone 3 speakers (p.23). You can select a zone to be assigned to the EXTRA SP1 jacks (default: Zone2) and EXTRA SP2 jacks (default: Zone3).
7ch BI-AMP	Select this when you use 7-channel speakers (including bi-amp front speakers) (p.22).

## ■ Configuration

Configures the output characteristics of the speakers.



- When you configure the speaker size, select “Large” if the woofer diameter of your speaker is 16 cm (6-1/4”) or larger or “Small” if it is smaller than 16 cm (6-1/4”).

### □ Front

Selects the size of the front speakers.

#### Settings

Large	Select this for large speakers. The front speakers will produce all of the front channel frequency components.
Small (default)	Select this for small speakers. The subwoofer will produce front channel components lower than the specified crossover frequency (default: 80Hz).



- “Front” is automatically set to “Large” when both “Subwoofer 1” and “Subwoofer 2” are set to “None”.

### □ Center

Selects whether or not a center speaker is connected and its size.

#### Settings

Large	Select this for large speaker. The center speaker will produce all of the center channel frequency components.
Small (default)	Select this for small speaker. The subwoofer will produce center channel components lower than the specified crossover frequency (default: 80Hz).
None	Select this when no center speaker is connected. The front speakers will produce center channel audio.

### □ Surround

Selects whether or not surround speakers are connected and its size.

#### Settings

Large	Select this for large speakers. The surround speakers will produce all of the surround channel frequency components.
Small (default)	Select this for small speakers. The subwoofer will produce surround channel components lower than the specified crossover frequency (default: 80Hz).

None

Select this when no surround speakers are connected.  
The front speakers will produce surround channel audio. Virtual CINEMA DSP works when you select a sound program.

### □ Surround Back

Selects whether or not surround back speakers are connected and its size.

#### Settings

Large x1	Select this when 1 large speaker is connected. The surround back speaker will produce all of the surround back channel frequency components.
Large x2	Select this when 2 large speakers are connected. The surround back speakers will produce all of the surround back channel frequency components.
Small x1	Select this when 1 small speaker is connected. The subwoofer will produce surround back channel components lower than the specified crossover frequency (default: 80Hz).
Small x2 (default)	Select this when 2 small speakers are connected. The subwoofer will produce surround back channel components lower than the specified crossover frequency (default: 80Hz).
None	Select this when no surround back speakers are connected. The surround speakers and subwoofer (or front speakers) will produce surround back channel audio.



- “Surround Back” is automatically set to “None” when “Surround” is set to “None”.

### □ Front Presence

Selects whether or not front presence speakers are connected.

#### Settings

Use (default)	Select this when front presence speakers are connected.
None	Select this when no front presence speakers are connected.

### □ Rear Presence

Selects whether or not to rear presence speakers are connected.

#### Settings

Use	Select this when rear presence speakers are connected.
None (default)	Select this when no rear presence speakers are connected.



- “Rear Presence” is automatically set to “None” when “Surround” or “Front Presence” is set to “None”.

## ❑ Subwoofer 1, Subwoofer 2

Selects whether or not subwoofer is connected to the SUBWOOFER 1 or SUBWOOFER 2 jack and its phase.

### Settings

Use	Normal (default)	Select this when a subwoofer is connected to the SUBWOOFER 1 or SUBWOOFER 2 jack (not to reverse the phase). The subwoofer will produce LFE (low-frequency effect) channel audio and low-frequency components from other channels.
	Reverse	Select this when a subwoofer is connected to the SUBWOOFER 1 or SUBWOOFER 2 jack (reverse the phase). The subwoofer will produce LFE (low-frequency effect) channel audio and low-frequency components from other channels.
None		Select this when no subwoofer is connected to the SUBWOOFER 1 or SUBWOOFER 2 jack. The front speakers will produce LFE (low-frequency effect) channel audio and low-frequency components from other channels when both "Subwoofer 1" and "Subwoofer 2" are set to "None".



- When the bass sound is lacking or unclear, switch the subwoofer phase.

## ❑ SWFR Layout

Selects a subwoofer layout when 2 subwoofers are used.

### Settings

Left + Right	Select this when 2 subwoofers are placed on the left and right sides of the room.
Front + Rear	Select this when 2 subwoofers are placed on the front and rear sides of the room.
Monaural x2 (default)	Select this when 2 subwoofers are placed freely.



- This setting is not available when "Subwoofer 1" or "Subwoofer 2" is set to "None".

## ❑ Extra Bass

Sets the speakers to produce the front channel low-frequency components.

### Settings

Off (default)	Depending on the size of the front speakers, either the subwoofer or front speakers produce the front channel low-frequency components.
On	Both the front speakers and subwoofer produce the front channel low-frequency components.



- This setting is not available when both "Subwoofer 1" and "Subwoofer 2" are set to "None", or "Front" is set to "Small".

## ■ Distance

Sets the distance between each speaker and listening position so that sounds from the speakers reach the listening position at the same time. First, select the unit of distance from "Meter" or "Feet".

### Choices

Front L, Front R, Center, Surround L, Surround R, Surround Back L, Surround Back R, Front Presence L, Front Presence R, Rear Presence L, Rear Presence R, Subwoofer 1, Subwoofer 2

### Setting range

0.30m ~ 24.00m (1.0ft ~ 80.0ft) \*0.05m (0.2ft) steps

### Default

3.00m (10.0ft)

## ■ Level

Adjusts the volume of each speaker.

### Choices

Front L, Front R, Center, Surround L, Surround R, Surround Back L, Surround Back R, Front Presence L, Front Presence R, Rear Presence L, Rear Presence R, Subwoofer 1, Subwoofer 2

### Setting range

-10.0dB ~ +10.0dB (0.5dB steps)

### Default

0.0dB

### Adjusting while viewing the front display

- ① Press LEVEL.
- ② Use the cursor keys ( $\Delta/\nabla$ ) to select a speaker.
- ③ Use the cursor keys ( $\leftarrow/\rightarrow$ ) to adjust the volume of the selected speaker.

## ■ Parametric EQ

Adjusts sound quality of tone with an equalizer.

### □ PEQ Select

Selects a type of equalizer to be used.

#### Settings

Manual	Select this when you want to adjust the equalizer manually. For details, see "Manual equalizer adjustment".
YPAO:Flat	Adjusts individual speakers to achieve the same characteristics.
YPAO:Front	Adjusts individual speakers to achieve the characteristics same as the front speakers.
YPAO:Natural	Adjusts all speakers to achieve a natural sound.
Through	Does not use the equalizer.



- "YPAO:Flat", "YPAO:Front" and "YPAO:Natural" are available only when the measurement results of "Auto Setup" have already been saved (p.44).

### □ PEQ Data Copy

Copies the parametric equalizer values acquired with "Auto Setup" (p.44) to the "Manual" fields for fine adjustment.

#### Choices

Flat > Manual	Copies the "Flat" values acquired with "Auto Setup".
Front > Manual	Copies the "Front" values acquired with "Auto Setup".
Natural > Manual	Copies the "Natural" values acquired with "Auto Setup".

## ■ Manual equalizer adjustment

**1** Set "PEQ Select" to "Manual" and press ENTER.

**2** Use the cursor keys to select a speaker and press ENTER.

**3** Use the cursor keys to select an item and press ENTER.

**Band / Gain:** You can select a center frequency from the preset 7 bands and adjust the gain.

**Freq. / Gain:** You can adjust the center frequency of the selected band and adjust the gain.

**Q / Gain:** You can adjust the Q factor (bandwidth) of the selected band and adjust the gain.

**Clear:** Restores the default settings for the selected speaker.

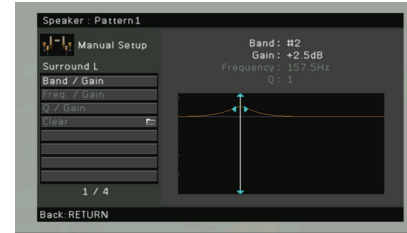
**4** Use the cursor keys to adjust parameters and press ENTER.

#### Setting range

Gain: -20.0dB ~ +6.0dB (0.5dB steps)

Center frequency: 31.3Hz ~ 16.0kHz

Q factor: 0.500 ~ 10.08



**5** To exit from the menu, press ON SCREEN.

## ■ Test Tone

Enables/disables the test tone output. Test tone output helps you to adjust the speaker balance or equalizer while confirming its effect.

#### Settings

Off (default)	Does not output test tones.
On	Outputs test tones automatically when you adjust the speaker balance, equalizer, etc.

# Sound

Configures the audio output settings.



## Lipsync

Adjusts the delay between video and audio output.

### Auto

Adjusts the delay between video and audio output automatically when a TV that supports an automatic lipsync function is connected to this unit via HDMI. If necessary, you can fine-adjust the audio output timing. "Offset" shows the difference between automatic adjustment and fine adjustment.

#### Setting range

0ms ~ 500ms (1ms steps)

#### Default

0ms

### Manual

Adjusts the delay between video and audio output manually.

#### Setting range

0ms ~ 500ms (1ms steps)

#### Default

0ms

## Dynamic Range

Selects the dynamic range adjustment method for bitstream audio (Dolby Digital and DTS signals) playback.

### Settings

Maximum (default)	Produces audio without adjusting the dynamic range.
Standard	Optimizes the dynamic range for regular home use.
Minimum/Auto	Sets the dynamic range to make clear sound even at night or at low volumes. When playing back Dolby TrueHD signals, the dynamic range is automatically adjusted based on the input signal information.

## Max Volume

Sets the maximum volume so that sound is not too loud.

### Setting range

-30.0dB ~ +15.0dB (5.0dB steps), +16.5dB

### Default

+16.5dB

## Initial Volume

Sets the initial volume for when this receiver is turned on.

### Settings

Off (default)	Sets at the level when this unit last entered standby mode.
On	Sets at Mute, or -80.0dB ~ +16.5dB (0.5dB steps). (This setting works only when "Max Volume" is set higher.)

## Pure Direct Mode

Selects whether to output video signals during the Pure Direct mode (p.58).

### Settings

Auto (default)	Automatically outputs video signals when any videos are input from the selected input source or an input source that can be operated with the on-screen display is selected. When no video signals are input, the wall paper is displayed.
Video Off	Does not output video signals including the wall paper.

## ■ Adaptive DSP Level

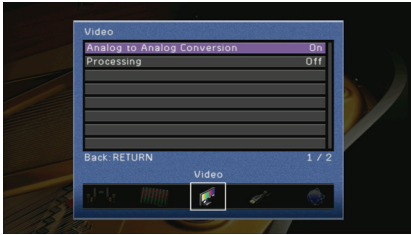
Selects whether to automatically adjust the CINEMA DSP effect level in conjunction with volume adjustments.

### Settings

Off	Does not adjust the effect level automatically.
On (default)	Adjusts the effect level automatically. Also, the effect level is corrected according to the measurement results of "Auto Setup" (p.44).

## Video

Configures the video output settings.



## ■ Analog to Analog Conversion

Enables/disables the video conversion (p.149) between the analog video jacks (COMPONENT VIDEO, S VIDEO and VIDEO).

### Settings

Off	Disables the video conversion between the analog video jacks.
On (default)	Enables the video conversion between the analog video jacks. Converted video signals are output from the MONITOR OUT jacks only.



- This function works only when "Monitor Out Assign" (p.119) is set to "Main".
- This unit does not convert 480-line and 576-line video signals interchangeably.
- 480p/576p-, 1080i- and 720p-resolution video signals cannot be output from the S VIDEO and VIDEO jacks (p.149).

## ■ Processing

Enables/disables the video signal processing (resolution, aspect ratio and video adjustments).

### Settings

Off (default)	Disables the video signal processing.
On	Enables the video signal processing. Configure the settings in "Resolution", "Aspect" and "Adjustment".

## □ Resolution

Selects a resolution to output HDMI video signals when "Processing" is set to "On".

### Settings

Through	Does not convert the resolution.
Auto (default)	Selects a resolution automatically in accordance with TV resolution.
480p/576p, 720p, 1080i, 1080p	Output video signals with a selected resolution. (Only the resolutions supported by your TV are selectable.)



- If you need to select a resolution that is not supported by your TV, set "MONITOR CHECK" (p.126) in the "ADVANCED SETUP" menu to "SKIP" and try again. (Note that output videos may not be displayed on your TV normally.)

## □ Aspect

Selects an aspect ratio to output HDMI video signals when "Processing" is set to "On".

### Settings

Through (default)	Does not convert the aspect ratio.
16:9 Normal	Outputs 4:3 video signals to a 16:9 TV with black bands on either side of the screen.
Smart Zoom	Adjusts 4:3 video signals to fit a 16:9 TV. (The edges of video images may be distorted.)



- This setting functions only when 480i/576i or 480p/576p signals are converted into 720p, 1080i or 1080p signals.

## Adjustment

Configures the video adjustments when "Processing" is set to "On". You can register the video adjustments as presets (up to 6).

### Setup procedure

- 1 Use the cursor keys ( $\Delta/\nabla$ ) to select a preset number and press ENTER.
- 2 Use the cursor keys ( $\Delta/\nabla$ ) to select an item.



- 3 Use the cursor keys ( $\leftarrow/\rightarrow$ ) to select a setting and press ENTER.
- 4 To exit from the menu, press ON SCREEN.

### Contrast Enhancement

Selects whether to automatically enhance the video contrast.

#### Settings

Off (default)	Does not enhance the video contrast.
Auto	Enhances the video contrast automatically.

### Resolution Enhancement

Selects whether to enhance the video resolution.

#### Settings

Off (default)	Does not enhance the video resolution.
Auto	Enhances the video resolution automatically.

### Noise Reduction (NR)

Selects whether to use the noise reduction functions.

#### Settings

Off (default)	Does not use the noise reduction functions.
Auto	Reduces the video noises automatically.

### Brightness

Adjusts the video brightness.

#### Setting range

-100 ~ +100

#### Default

0

### Contrast

Adjusts the video contrast.

#### Setting range

-100 ~ +100

#### Default

0

### Saturation

Adjusts the video saturation.

#### Setting range

-100 ~ +100

#### Default

0

## HDMI

Configures the settings related to HDMI.



### ■ HDMI Control

Enables/disables HDMI Control (p. 150).

#### Settings

Off (default)	Disables HDMI Control.
On	Enables HDMI Control. Configure the settings in "TV Audio Input", "ARC" and "Standby Sync".



- To use HDMI control, you need to perform the HDMI Control link setup (p.150) after connecting HDMI Control-compatible devices.

### □ TV Audio Input

Selects an audio input jack of this unit to be used for TV audio input when "HDMI Control" is set to "On". The input source of this unit automatically switches to TV audio (input jack selected in here) when the TV input is switched to its built-in tuner.

#### Settings

AUDIO1~4

#### Default

AUDIO1



- When using ARC to input TV audio to this unit, you cannot use the input jacks selected in here for connecting an external device because the input will be used for TV audio input.

### □ ARC

Enables/disables ARC (p.29) when "HDMI Control" is set to "On".

#### Settings

Off	Disables ARC.
On (default)	Enables ARC.



- You do not need to change this setting normally. In case noises are produced from the speakers connected to this unit because TV audio signals input to this unit via ARC are not supported by this unit, set "ARC" to "Off" and use the TV speaker.

### □ Standby Sync

Select whether to set this unit to standby in conjunction with TV power-off when "HDMI Control" is set to "On".

#### Settings

Off	Does not set this unit to standby mode in conjunction with TV power-off.
On	Sets this unit to standby mode in conjunction with TV power-off.
Auto (default)	Sets this unit to standby mode in conjunction with TV power-off only when this unit is receiving TV audio or HDMI signals.



## ■ Audio Output

Selects a device to output audio.



- The “Amp” and “HDMI OUT1” settings are available only when “HDMI Control” is set to “Off”.

### □ Amp

Enables/disables the audio output from the speakers connected to this unit.

#### Settings

Off	Disables the audio output from the speakers.
On (default)	Enables the audio output from the speakers.

### □ HDMI OUT1, HDMI OUT2

Enables/disables the audio output from a TV connected to the HDMI OUT 1 jack or HDMI OUT 2 jack.

#### Settings

Off (default)	Disables the audio output from the TV.
On	Enables the audio output from the TV.

## ■ Standby Through

Select whether to output videos/audio (input through HDMI jacks) to the TV when this unit is in standby mode.

#### Settings

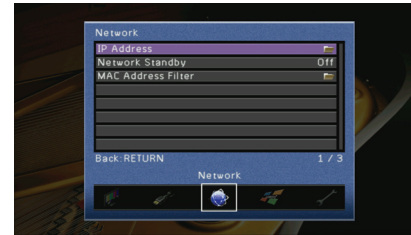
Off (default)	Does not output videos/audio to the TV.
On	Outputs videos/audio to the TV. (This unit consumes approximately 3 W of power.)



- This setting is available only when “HDMI Control” is set to “Off”.

## Network

Configures the network settings.



### ■ IP Address

Configures the network parameters (IP address, etc).

### □ DHCP

Select whether to use a DHCP server.

#### Settings

Off	Does not use a DHCP server. Configure the network parameters manually.
On (default)	Uses a DHCP server to automatically obtain the network parameters (IP address, etc.) of this unit.

### □ Manual Setup

Configures the network parameters of this unit manually when “DHCP” is set to “Off”.

#### Submenu

IP Address	Specifies an IP address.
Subnet Mask	Specifies a subnet mask.
Default Gateway	Specifies the IP address of the default gateway.
DNS Server (P)	Specifies the IP address of the primary DNS server.
DNS Server (S)	Specifies the IP address of the secondary DNS server.

## ■ Network Standby

Selects whether to turn on this unit by the command from other network devices (network standby).

### Settings

Off (default)	Disables the network standby function.
On	Enables the network standby function. (This unit consumes approximately 5 W of power.)

## ■ MAC Address Filter

Sets the MAC address filter to limit access to this unit from other network devices.

### □ Mode

Enables/disables the MAC address filter.

### Settings

Off (default)	Disables the MAC address filter.
On	Enables the MAC address filter. In "Address Setup", specify the MAC addresses of the network devices that will be permitted access to this unit.

### □ Address Setup

Specifies the MAC addresses (up to 10) of the network devices that will be permitted access to this unit when "Mode" is set to "On".

## Multi Zone

Configures the multi zone settings.



## ■ Zone2 Set, Zone3 Set

Configures the audio output settings for Zone2 or Zone3.

### □ Volume

Enables/disables volume adjustments for Zone2 or Zone3 output.

### Settings

Fixed	Disables volume adjustments for Zone2 or Zone3 output.
Variable (default)	Enables volume adjustments for Zone2 or Zone3 output.



- This setting is available only when the corresponding zone speakers are connected to this unit via an external amplifier (p.86).

### □ Max Volume

Sets the Zone2 or Zone3 maximum volume so that sound is not too loud.

### Setting range

-30.0dB ~ +15.0dB (5.0dB steps), +16.5dB

### Default

+16.5dB

### □ Initial Volume

Sets the Zone2 or Zone3 initial volume for when this unit is turned on.

### Settings

Off (default)	Sets at the level when this unit last entered standby mode.
On	Sets at Mute, or -80.0dB ~ +16.5dB (0.5dB steps). (This setting works only when "Max Volume" is set higher.)

## □ Mono

Switches between stereo and monaural for Zone2 or Zone3 output.

### Settings

Off (default)	Produces stereo sounds in Zone2 or Zone3.
On	Produces monaural sounds in Zone2 or Zone3.

## ■ Monitor Out Assign

Select the zone for which the MONITOR OUT/ZONE OUT (COMPONENT VIDEO, S VIDEO and VIDEO) jacks are used.

### Settings

Main (default), Zone2, Zone3



- The video conversion between the analog video jacks does not work for multi-zone video output. To watch videos played back on a video device on the zone video monitor, you need to connect the video monitor to this unit in the same way as the video device.

## ■ Party Mode Set

Enables/disables switching to the party mode (p.90) for each zone.

### Choice

Target: Zone2, Target: Zone3

### Settings

Disable	Disables switching to the party mode.
Enable (default)	Enables switching to the party mode. You can turn on/off the party mode by pressing PARTY on the remote control.

## ■ Zone Scene Rename

Changes the scene names (for Zone2 or Zone3) displayed on the front display or TV screen.

### ■ Setup procedure

- 1 Use the cursor keys to select a zone and press ENTER.
- 2 Use the cursor keys to select a scene to be renamed and press ENTER.
- 3 Press ENTER, use the cursor keys to rename, and then press ENTER again.



- 4 Use the cursor keys to select "OK" and press ENTER.



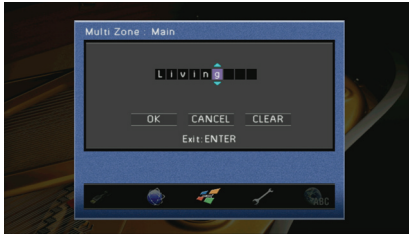
- To clear the entry, select "CLEAR".
- 5 To exit from the menu, press ON SCREEN.

## Zone Rename

Changes the zone names displayed on the front display or TV screen.

### Setup procedure

- 1 Use the cursor keys to select a zone to be renamed and press ENTER.
- 2 Press ENTER, use the cursor keys to rename, and then press ENTER again.



- 3 Use the cursor keys to select "OK" and press ENTER.



- To clear the entry, select "CLEAR".

- 4 To exit from the menu, press ON SCREEN.

## Function

Configures the functions that make this unit easier to use.



## Auto Power Down

Sets the amount of time for auto-standby. If you do not operate this unit for the specified time, this unit will automatically go into standby mode.

### Settings

Off (default)	Does not set this unit to standby mode automatically.
4 Hours, 8 Hours, 12 Hours	Sets this unit to standby mode when you have not operated this unit for the specified time.

## Input Assignment

Assigns the COMPONENT VIDEO, COAXIAL and OPTICAL jacks to another input source.

### Setup procedure

Example: assigning the OPTICAL (5) jack to the input source "AV2"

- 1 Use the cursor keys to select the cell at the intersection of "AV2" and "Optical", and press ENTER.



- 2 Use the cursor keys to select "5" and press ENTER.



- 3 To exit from the menu, press ON SCREEN.



- You cannot assign both COAXIAL and OPTICAL jacks to the same input source.

## ■ Display Set

Configures the settings related to the front display and TV screen display.

### □ Front Panel Display

Configures the front display settings.

#### Dimmer

Adjusts the brightness of the front display.

##### Setting range

-4 ~ 0 (higher to brighten)

##### Default

0

#### Scroll

Sets the scrolling manner of the front display.

The display scrolls automatically if the text exceeds 14 characters.

##### Settings

Continue (default)	Sets the display to scroll continuously.
Once	Sets the display to scroll all characters once and then halt scrolling for display of the first 14 characters.

### □ Short Message

Selects whether to display short messages on the TV screen when this unit is operated (input selection, volume adjustment, etc).

##### Settings

On (default)	Displays short messages on the TV screen.
Off	Does not display short messages on the TV screen.

### □ Wall Paper

Selects a wall paper displayed on the TV.

##### Settings

Picture1, Picture2, Picture3	Displays the selected image on the TV screen when there is no video signal.
Gray	Displays a gray background on the TV screen when there is no video signal.

## ■ Trigger Output1, Trigger Output2

Sets the TRIGGER OUT 1~2 jacks to function synchronized with power status of each zone or input switching.

### □ Trigger Mode

Specifies the condition for the TRIGGER OUT jack to function.

##### Settings

Power (default)	The TRIGGER OUT jack functions synchronized with the power status of the zone specified with "Target Zone."
Source	The TRIGGER OUT jack functions synchronized with the input switching in the zone specified with "Target Zone." Electronic signal is transmitted according to the setting made in "Target Source."
Manual	Select this to manually switch the output level for electronic signal transmission with "Manual."

### □ Target Zone

Specifies the zone with which the TRIGGER OUT jack functions synchronized.

##### Settings

Main	When "Trigger Mode" is set to "Power," electronic signal transmission is synchronized with power status of the main zone. When "Trigger Mode" is set to "Source," electronic signal transmission is synchronized with input switching in the main zone.
Zone2	When "Trigger Mode" is set to "Power," electronic signal transmission is synchronized with power status of Zone2. When "Trigger Mode" is set to "Source," electronic signal transmission is synchronized with input switching in Zone2.
Zone3	When "Trigger Mode" is set to "Power," electronic signal transmission is synchronized with power status of Zone3. When "Trigger Mode" is set to "Source," electronic signal transmission is synchronized with input switching in Zone3.
All (default)	When "Trigger Mode" is set to "Power," electronic signal transmission is synchronized with power status of the main zone, Zone2 or Zone3. When "Trigger Mode" is set to "Source," electronic signal transmission is synchronized with input switching in the main zone, Zone2 or Zone3.

## □ Target Source

Specifies the output level of the electronic signal transmitted with each input switching when "Trigger Mode" is set to "Source".

### Choices

AV1~7, V-AUX, AUDIO1~4, PHONO, TUNER, Sirius Satellite Radio, (network sources), USB, DOCK, MULTI CH

### Settings

Low	Stops the electronic signal transmission when you switch to the input source specified in this option.
High (default)	Transmits the electronic signal when you switch to the input source specified in this option.

## □ Manual

Switches the output level for electronic signal transmission manually when "Trigger Mode" is set to "Manual". This setting can also be used to confirm proper function of the external component connected via the TRIGGER OUT jack.

### Choices

Low	Stops the electronic signal transmission.
High (default)	Transmits the electronic signal.

## ■ Memory Guard

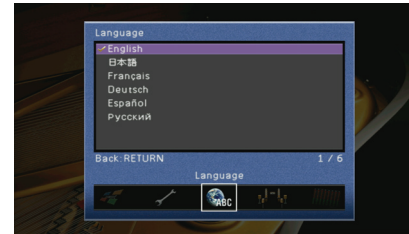
Prevents accidental changes to the settings.

### Settings

Off (default)	Does not protect the settings.
On	Protects the settings until "Off" is selected.

## Language

Select an on-screen menu language.



### Settings

English (default)	English
日本語	Japanese
Français	French
Deutsch	German
Español	Spanish
Русский	Russian

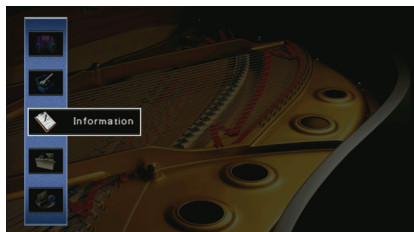


- The information on the front display is provided in English only.

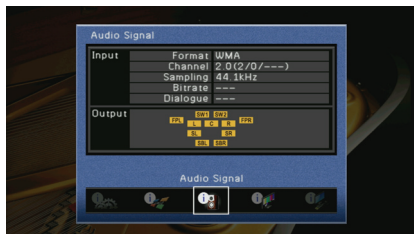
## Viewing information about this unit (Information menu)

You can view information about this unit using the TV screen.

- 1 Press **ON SCREEN**.
- 2 Use the cursor keys to select “Information” and press **ENTER**.



- 3 Use the cursor keys (</>) to select an information type.



- 4 To exit from the menu, press **ON SCREEN**.

## Types of information

### ■ Audio Signal

Displays information about the current audio signal.

Input	Format	Audio format of the input signal
	Channel	The number of source channels in the input signal (front/surround/LFE) For example, “5.1 (3/2/0.1)” means 5.1ch in total (3 front channels, 2 surround channels, and LFE).
	Sampling	The number of samples per second of the input digital signal
	Bitrate	The amount of data per second of the input bitstream signal
	Dialogue	The dialogue normalization level of the input bitstream signal
Output	The speaker terminals from which signals are output	



- Even when this unit is set to output bitstream signals directly, the signal may be converted depending on the specifications and settings of the playback device.

### ■ Video Signal

Displays information about the current video signal.

HDMI Signal	Presence or absence of HDMI signal input/output	
HDMI Resolution	Resolutions of input signal (analog or HDMI) and output signal (HDMI)	
Analog Resolution	Resolutions of input signal (analog) and signal output at the MONITOR OUT jacks (analog)	
HDMI Error	Errors related to HDMI	
	HDCP Error: The TV does not support HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection).	
	Device Over: The number of devices connected to the HDMI OUT jack is over the limit.	

### ■ HDMI Monitor

Displays information about the TVs connected to the HDMI OUT jacks. Use the cursor keys (</>) to switch between “OUT1” and “OUT2”.

Interface	TV interface
Video Resolution	Resolutions supported by the TV

## Network

Displays the network information on this unit.

IP Address	IP address
Subnet Mask	Subnet mask
Default Gateway	The IP address of the default gateway
DNS Server (P)	The IP address of the primary DNS server
DNS Server (S)	The IP address of the secondary DNS server
MAC Address	MAC address
Status	Network connection status

## System

Displays the system information on this unit.

Remote ID	The remote control ID setting of the main unit (p.125)
TV Format	The video signal type setting of this unit (p.126)
Speaker Impedance	The speaker impedance setting of this unit (p.125)
System ID	System ID number
Firmware Version	The version of firmware installed on this unit



- If this unit detects a newer firmware over the network, "!" (exclamation mark) appears at the upper right of the "Information" and "System" icons, and the corresponding message will be displayed in this screen. You can update the firmware of this unit by pressing ENTER in this screen and following the procedure in "Updating the firmware of this unit" (p.137).


## Zone

Displays information about Zone2 and Zone3.

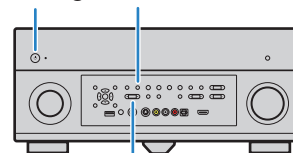
Input	The input source selected for Zone2 or Zone3
Volume	The volume setting for Zone2 or Zone3

## Configuring the system settings (ADVANCED SETUP menu)


You can configure the system settings of this unit using the front display.

- 1 Set this unit to standby mode.
- 2 While holding down STRAIGHT on the front panel, press MAIN ZONE .

MAIN ZONE  STRAIGHT



PROGRAM

- 3 Press PROGRAM to select an item.
- 4 Press STRAIGHT to select a setting.
- 5 Press MAIN ZONE  to set this unit to standby mode and turn it on again.

The new settings become effective.



## ADVANCED SETUP menu items

Item	Function	Page
SPEAKER IMP.	Changes the speaker impedance setting.	125
REMOTE SENSOR	Turns on/off of the remote control sensor on the main unit.	125
REMOTE CON AMP	Selects the remote control ID of the main unit.	125
SIRIUS LOCK	Resets the Parental Lock code number for SIRIUS Satellite Radio.	126
TV FORMAT	Switches the video signal type.	126
MONITOR CHECK	Removes the limitation on HDMI video output.	126
RECOV./BACKUP	Creates backup of the settings of this unit, or recovers the settings from the backup.	126
INITIALIZE	Restores the default settings.	127
FIRM UPDATE	Updates the firmware.	127
VERSION	Checks the version of firmware currently installed on this unit.	127

## Changing the speaker impedance setting (SPEAKER IMP.)



SPEAKER IMP.  
8Ω MIN

Change the speaker impedance settings of unit depending on the impedance of the speakers connected.

### Settings

6 Ω MIN	Select this when you connect 6-ohm speakers to this unit. You can also use 4-ohm speakers as the front speakers.
8 Ω MIN (default)	Select this when you connect 8-ohm or higher speakers to this unit.

## Turning on/off the remote control sensor (REMOTE SENSOR)



REMOTE SENSOR  
ON

Turn on/off the remote control sensor on the main unit. While the remote control sensor is turned off, you cannot control this unit from the remote control.

### Settings

ON (default)	Turns on the remote control sensor.
OFF	Turns off the remote control sensor.

## Selecting the remote control ID (REMOTE CON AMP)



REMOTE CON AMP  
ID1

Select the remote control ID of the main unit so that it matches to the ID of the remote control (default: ID1). When using multiple Yamaha AV receivers, you can set each remote control with a unique remote control ID for its corresponding receiver.

### Settings

ID1 (default), ID2

## Changing the remote control ID of the remote control

Perform each of the following steps within 30 seconds. Otherwise, the setting will be automatically canceled.

- 1 Press **SETUP**.
- 2 Use the cursor keys ( $\Delta/\nabla$ ) to select “PRESET” and press **ENTER**.



PRESET

- 3 Press **RECEIVER**  $\text{⏻}$  and press **ENTER**.
- 4 Use the numeric keys or cursor keys to enter “5019” (ID1) or “5020” (ID2).



5020

## 5 Press ENTER to confirm the setting.

Once the remote control ID is registered successfully, "OK" appears in the display window.

If "ERROR" appears, registration failed. Repeat from step 3.

## 6 To exit from the setup menu, press SETUP.



- The registered remote control codes (p.128) are not cleared even if you change the remote control ID.

## Resetting the Parental Lock code number (SIRIUS LOCK)



Reset the Parental Lock code number for SIRIUS Satellite Radio.

### Choices

RESET	Resets the Parental Lock code number.
CANCEL	Does not perform a reset.

## Switching the video signal type (TV FORMAT)



Switch the video signal type of this unit so that it matches to the format of your TV.

### Settings

NTSC (default), PAL

## Removing the limitation on HDMI video output (MONITOR CHECK)



This unit automatically detects resolutions supported by a TV connected to the HDMI OUT jacks.

If you want to select a resolution in "Resolution" (p.114) regardless of the detection results or if this unit does not detect it correctly, disable the monitor check function.

### Settings

YES (default)	Enables the monitor check function. (Outputs video signals with a resolution supported by the TV only.)
SKIP	Disables the monitor check function. (Outputs video signals with a specified resolution regardless of compatibility with the TV.)



- In case this unit becomes inoperable because videos from this unit cannot be displayed on the TV after "MONITOR CHECK" is set to "SKIP", reset the setting to "YES".

## Backing up/recovering the settings (RECOV./BACKUP)



Creates backup of the settings of this unit, or recovers the settings from the backup.

### Backup/recovery procedure

- Press STRAIGHT repeatedly to select "BACKUP" or "RECOVERY" and press INFO to start the process.

### Choices

BACKUP	Creates backup of the settings of this unit in the internal memory.
RECOVERY	Recovers the settings of this unit from the backup (available only when backup has been created).

### Note

- Do not turn off this unit during the recovery process. Otherwise, the settings may not be restored correctly.
- The backup does not contain user information (user account, password, etc.) or unit-specific information (MAC address, IP address, etc).

## Restoring the default settings (INITIALIZE)



Restores the default settings for the selected item.

### Choices

VIDEO	Restores the default settings for video configurations.
ALL	Restores the default settings for this unit.
CANCEL	Does not perform an initialization.

## Updating the firmware (FIRM UPDATE)

New firmware will be released irregularly for the purpose of additional features or product improvements. It can be downloaded from our website. If this unit is connected to the Internet, you can download the firmware via the network. For details, refer to the information supplied with updates.



### Firmware update procedure

Do not perform this procedure unless firmware update is necessary. Also, make sure you read the information supplied with updates before updating the firmware.

- 1 Press **STRAIGHT** repeatedly to select “USB” or “NETWORK” and press **INFO** to start firmware update.

### Choices

USB	Update the firmware using a USB memory device.
NETWORK	Update the firmware via the network.



- If this unit detects a newer firmware over the network, the corresponding message will be displayed after ON SCREEN is pressed. In this case, you can also update the firmware of this unit by following the procedure in “Updating the firmware of this unit” (p.137).

## Checking the firmware version (VERSION)

Check the version of firmware currently installed on this unit.



- You can also check the firmware version in “System” (p.124) in the “Information” menu.

## Controlling external devices with the remote control

By setting the code for external devices (BD/DVD players, etc.) or assigning a function to each key using the learning function, you can operate the external device with the remote control of this unit. You can also use the macro function to sequentially operate multiple functions at once.

### 1 Press SETUP.



- If no operation is performed within 30 seconds, the remote control automatically exits from the setup menu.

### 2 Use the cursor keys ( $\Delta/\nabla$ ) to select an item and press ENTER.

Item name



Item	Function	Page
LEARN	Assigns a function to each key by learning the code from other remote controls.	130
PRESET	Sets the remote control code for external devices.	128
RENAME	Edits the device names or scene names displayed on the remote control's display window.	131
MACRO	Programs macro operations (sequence of control commands).	132
CLEAR	Clears the remote control configurations.	134
ERASE	Erases a function assigned to each key by learning.	134
EX-IR	Extended IR code mode. This feature is for the authorized custom installers only.	—



- You cannot control an external device that does not have a remote control sensor.

## Setting remote control codes

### ■ Setting the remote control code for a TV

By setting the remote control code for your TV, you can operate it with the remote control of this unit.



- You can also register a remote control code of your TV to the input selection keys (p.129). In this case, you can use the cursor keys or numeric keys to operate the TV depending on its model. However, you need to press the corresponding input selection key to play back TV audio on this unit.

### 1 Use “Remote Control Code Search” in the CD-ROM to find a remote control code for your TV.



- If multiple remote control codes exist, first set the first code in the list, if it does not work then try the other codes.

### 2 Press SETUP.

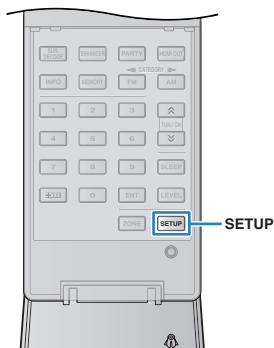
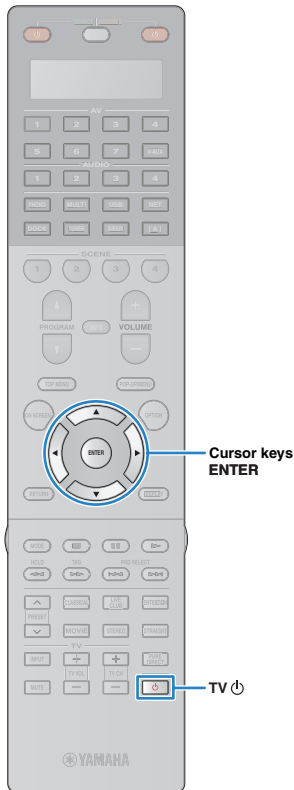
Perform each of the following steps within 30 seconds. Otherwise, the setting will be canceled. In this case, repeat from step 2.

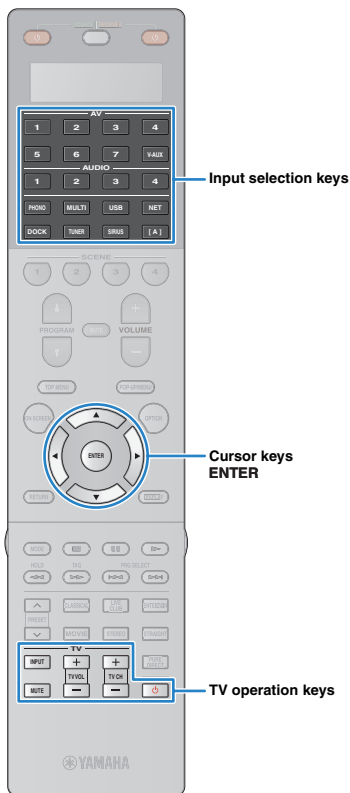
### 3 Use the cursor keys ( $\Delta/\nabla$ ) to select “PRESET” and press ENTER.



### 4 Press TV $\text{⏻}$ and press ENTER.

“----” (empty) or code currently registered





## 5 Use the numeric keys or cursor keys to enter the 4-digit remote control and press ENTER.

Once the remote control code is set successfully, "OK" appears in the display window.

If "ERROR" appears, registration failed. Repeat from step 3.

## 6 To exit from the setup menu, press SETUP.

### TV operations

Once you have set the remote control code for your TV, you can control it using the TV operation keys regardless of an input source selected on this unit.

TV operation keys	INPUT	Switches the video inputs of the TV.
	MUTE	Mutes the audio output of the TV.
	TV VOL	Adjust the volume of the TV.
	TV CH	Switch the channels of the TV.
	TV	Turns on/off the TV.

## Setting the remote control codes for playback devices

By setting the remote control codes for your playback devices, you can operate those devices with the remote control of this unit. Since the codes are assigned to each input source key, you can select the input source and device to control with the remote control concurrently.



- At the factory, Yamaha CD player code (5095) is set for AUDIO2 and Yamaha AV receiver code (5098) is set for the other input selection keys.
- If you assign the remote control code for an external device to the [A] key, you can operate the device with the remote control without switching the input source after pressing the [A] key.
- When HDMI control of both this unit and playback device such as a BD/DVD player are enabled, you may be able to control the device with the remote control without registering the remote control code.

## 1 Use "Remote Control Code Search" in the CD-ROM to find a remote control code for your playback device.



- If multiple remote control codes exist, first set the first code in the list, if it does not work then try the other codes.

## 2 Press SETUP.

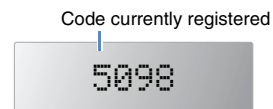
Perform each of the following steps within 30 seconds. Otherwise, the setting will be canceled. In this case, repeat from step 2.

## 3 Use the cursor keys ( $\Delta/\nabla$ ) to select "PRESET" and press ENTER.



## 4 Press a corresponding input selection key and press ENTER.

For example, press AV1 to set the remote control code for the playback device connected to the AV1 jack.

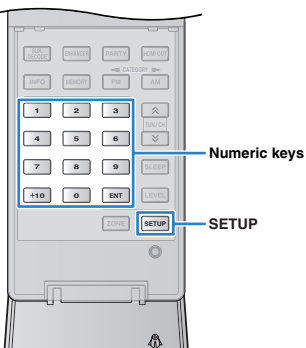


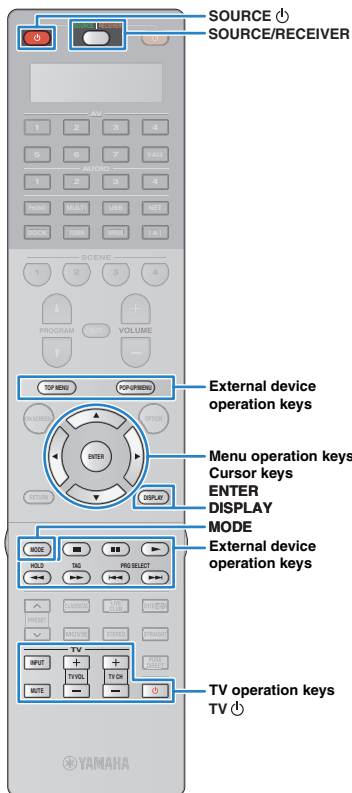
## 5 Use the numeric keys or cursor keys to enter the 4-digit remote control and press ENTER.

Once the remote control code is set successfully, "OK" appears in the display window.

If "ERROR" appears, registration failed. Repeat from step 3.

## 6 To set another remote control code, repeat steps 4 and 5.





## 7 To exit from the setup menu, press **SETUP**.



- For details on how to register the input selection key applied the remote control code on a corresponding SCENE key, refer to “Configuring scene assignments” (p.53).

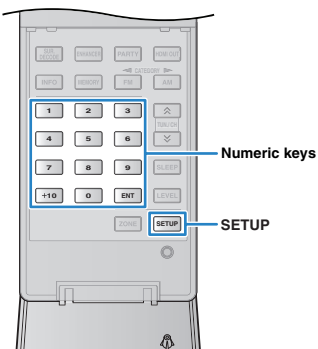
### □ Playback device operations

Once you have registered the remote control code for your playback device, you can control it using the following keys after selecting the input source or scene.



- By pressing **SOURCE/RECEIVER**, you can switch the devices (this unit or external device) to operate with the menu operation keys, **DISPLAY** and numeric keys. You can operate this unit when **SOURCE/RECEIVER** lights up in orange, and an external device when **SOURCE/RECEIVER** lights up in green. For example, if you register the remote control code of your external device on **TUNER**, you can operate FM/AM radio built in this unit when **SOURCE/RECEIVER** lights up in orange, and the external device when **SOURCE/RECEIVER** lights up in green.

<b>SOURCE</b>	Turns on/off the playback device.	
Menu operation keys	Cursor keys	Select an item.
	<b>ENTER</b>	Confirms a selected item.
	<b>RETURN</b>	Returns to the previous screen.
<b>DISPLAY</b>	Switches information on the display.	
<b>MODE</b>	Switches between modes.	
External device operation keys	<b>TOP MENU</b>	Displays the top menu.
	<b>POP-UP/MENU</b>	Displays the pop-up menu.
		Stops playback.
		Stops playback temporarily.
		Starts playback of the selected song/video.
		Search forward/backward (by holding down).
		Search forward/backward (by holding down).
		Skip forward/backward.
		Skip forward/backward.
		Skip forward/backward.
Numeric keys	Enter numerical values.	
TV operation keys	Control the TV (p. 129).	



- These keys work only when the corresponding function is available on your playback device and is possible to be operated with an infrared remote control.

## Programming from other remote controls (learning)

The remote control of this unit can receive remote control signals from other remote controls and learn the remote control operation. If you cannot find a remote control code for your playback device or if any key on the remote control does not work after you set the remote control code, use the learning function to assign a function to each key.

### 1 Press **SETUP**.

Perform each of the following steps within 30 seconds. Otherwise, the setting will be canceled. In this case, repeat from step 1.

### 2 Use the cursor keys ( $\Delta/\nabla$ ) to select “**LEARN**” and press **ENTER**.

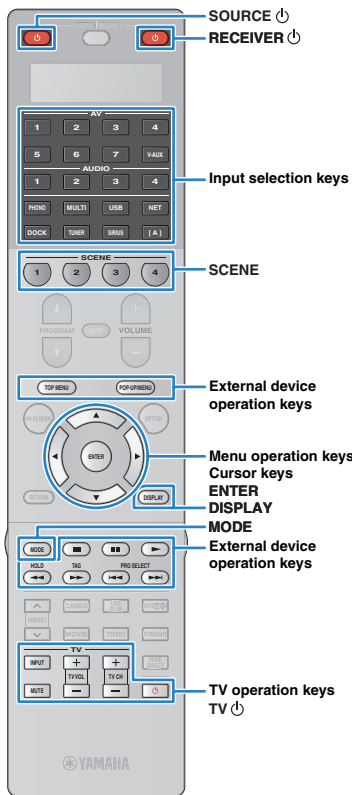


### 3 Press one of the following keys depending on the type of your device.

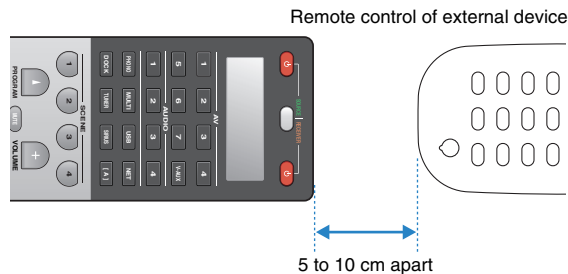
**For playback device:** press the input selection key (corresponding to the input jacks where the device is connected).

**For TV:** press **TV** .

### 4 Press **ENTER**.



## 5 Aim the infrared transmitters of the remote controls at each other.



## 6 Perform the following steps (① and ②) within 10 seconds.

- ① On this unit, press one of the following keys to which you want to assign a function.

**For playback device:** SOURCE, menu operations keys, DISPLAY, MODE, external device operation keys, numeric keys

**For TV:** TV operation keys

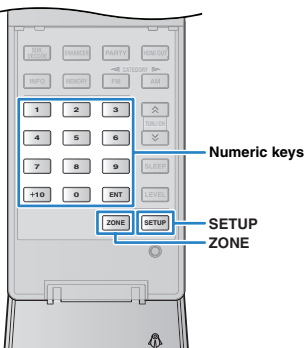
- ② On the external device, press the key from which the operation is learned until "OK" appears in the display window. If "NG" appears, learning failed. Repeat from step 4.

## 7 Repeat steps 3 to 6 until all desired operations are learned.

## 8 To exit from the setup menu, press SETUP.



- This remote control can learn approximately 200 functions (may be decreased depending on the signals). If "FULL" appears in the display window, clear unnecessary assignments to free some memory space for the new functions.



### Note

- If you press RECEIVER in step 3, you can assign functions of an external receiver to the menu operation keys, external device operation keys or numeric keys. However, it makes these keys to control this unit impossible. If you need to restore the remote control code for this unit, perform the following steps.

- ① Press SETUP.
- ② Use the cursor keys ( $\Delta/\nabla$ ) to select "CLEAR" and press ENTER.
- ③ Use the cursor keys ( $\Delta/\nabla$ ) to select "LEARN" and press ENTER.
- ④ Press RECEIVER.
- ⑤ Hold down ENTER until "OK" appears on the window display.
- ⑥ To exit from the setup menu, press SETUP.

## Editing device names

You can edit the device names or scene names displayed on the remote control's display window.

### 1 Press SETUP.

Perform each of the following steps within 30 seconds.

Otherwise, the setting will be canceled. In this case, repeat from step 1.

### 2 Use the cursor keys ( $\Delta/\nabla$ ) to select "RENAME" and press ENTER.

RENAME

### 3 Press one of the following keys to select a device or a scene.

**For playback device:** press the input selection key (corresponding to the input jacks where the device is connected).

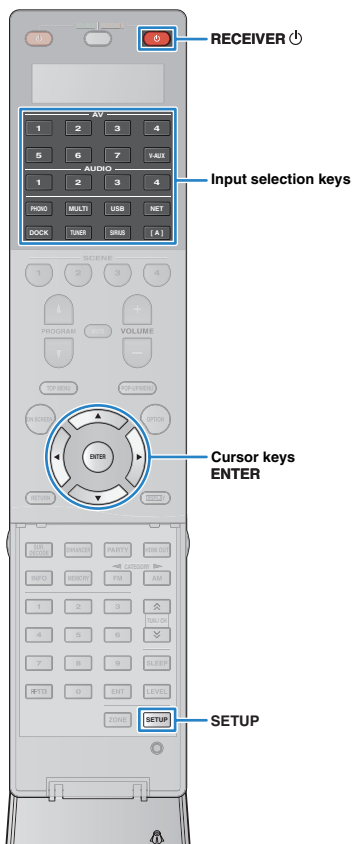
**For TV:** press TV.

**For AV receiver (this unit):** press RECEIVER.

**For scene:** press one of the SCENE keys.



- To edit scene names of each zone, press one of the SCENE keys and press ZONE to select a zone.



**4 Press ENTER.**

**5 Use the cursor keys to rename.**

To locate the position, use the cursor keys (◀/▶).  
To select a character (A to Z, a to z, 0 to 9, space, symbols), use the cursor keys (△/▽).



**6 Press ENTER to set the new name.**

Once the new name is set successfully, "OK" appears in the display window.

**7 To edit another device name (or scene name), repeat steps 3 to 6.**

**8 To exit from the setup menu, press SETUP.**

## Operating multiple functions at once (macro)

The macro function allows you to sequentially operate multiple functions at once.

For example, when you want to listen to a CD, you can turn on the CD player, select the corresponding input source on this unit and start playback on the CD player sequentially with a single key operation.

## ■ Enabling the macro operations

**1 Press SETUP.**

Perform each of the following steps within 30 seconds.

Otherwise, the setting will be canceled. In this case, repeat from step 1.

**2 Use the cursor keys (△/▽) to select "MACRO" and press ENTER.**



**3 Use the cursor keys (△/▽) to select "ON" and press ENTER.**



**4 To exit from the setup menu, press SETUP.**

"MACRO" lights up (when macro operations are enabled)

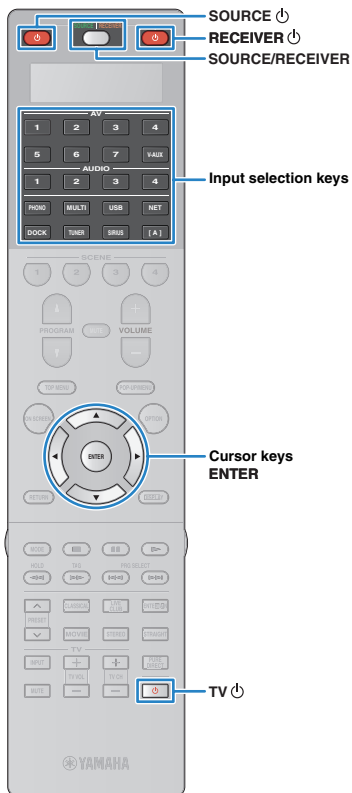


- To disable the macro operations, select "OFF" in step 3.

By default, the following macro operations are available after pressing a macro operation key when the macro operations are enabled.

Macro operation key	Macro operations	
	1st command	2nd command
RECEIVER ⏻	Turns on this unit.	(unregistered)
Input selection keys	Turns on this unit.	Selects the corresponding input source. (unregistered for the [A] key)





## ■ Programming macro operations

You can program up to 10 remote control commands for each macro operation key. If you press the corresponding macro operation key, the multiple operations will be carried out sequentially according to the programmed remote control commands.



- Before programming macro operations, you need to set the remote control codes (p.128) or assign a function to each key using the learning function (p.130).
- We do not recommend including continuous operations (such as volume adjustment) in macro operations.

### 1 Press **SETUP**.

Perform each of the following steps within 30 seconds.

Otherwise, the setting will be canceled. In this case, repeat from step 1.

### 2 Use the cursor keys ( $\Delta/\nabla$ ) to select “MACRO” and press **ENTER**.



### 3 Use the cursor keys ( $\Delta/\nabla$ ) to select “EDIT” and press **ENTER**.



### 4 Press the macro operation key (**RECEIVER** or input selection key) to which macro operations are assigned and press **ENTER**.

“MACRO 1” appears in the display window.



### 5 Press the keys for functions (up to 10) you want to include in the macro operations in sequence.

To switch the devices (this unit or external device) to control, press **SOURCE/RECEIVER**.

(Example)

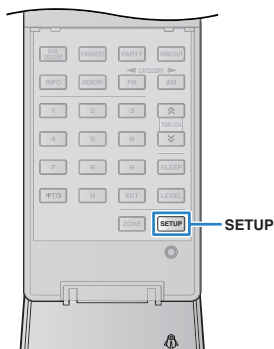
Programming for ①turning on this unit, ②selecting “AV1” as the input source, ③turning on the DVD player assigned to “AV1” and ④turning on the TV

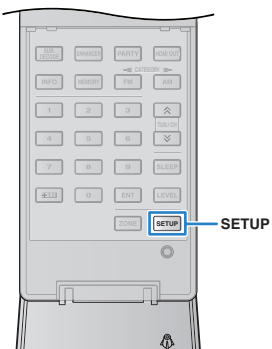
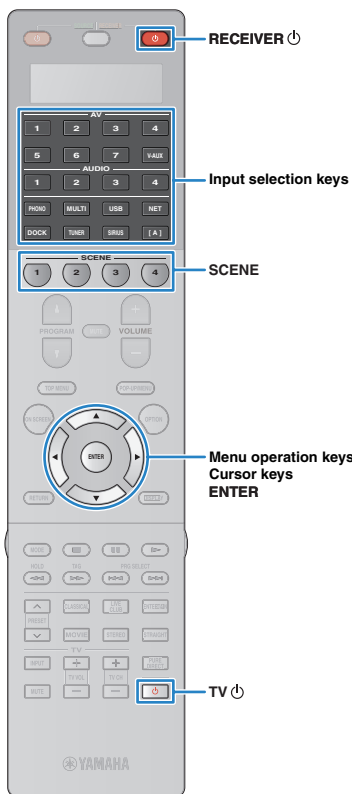
- ① (MACRO 1) Press **RECEIVER**.
- ② (MACRO 2) Press **AV1**.
- ③ (MACRO 3) Press **SOURCE/RECEIVER** repeatedly to select “AV1” and press **SOURCE**.
- ④ (MACRO 4) Press **SOURCE/RECEIVER** repeatedly to select “TV” and press **TV**.

### 6 To confirm the setting, hold down **ENTER** until “OK” appears on the window display.

If you have programmed 10 functions, “FULL” appears and the setting is confirmed automatically.

### 7 To exit from the setup menu, press **SETUP**.





## Resetting the remote control configurations

### ■ Clearing the remote control configurations

You can clear remote control configurations by selecting a type of settings or clear all the remote control configurations.

#### 1 Press SETUP.

Perform each of the following steps within 30 seconds. Otherwise, the setting will be canceled. In this case, repeat from step 1.

#### 2 Use the cursor keys ( $\Delta/\nabla$ ) to select “CLEAR” and press ENTER.



#### 3 Use the cursor keys ( $\Delta/\nabla$ ) to select the settings to be cleared and press ENTER.



LEARN	Clears the functions learned from other remote controls.
PRESET	Restores the default remote control code settings.
RENAME	Restores the default device name settings.
MACRO	Clears the macro operation settings.
RESET	Clears all remote control configurations and restores default settings.

“ALL” appears in the display window.



To apply the selection to all the corresponding keys, proceed to step 5.

To apply the selection to a specific key, proceed to step 4.



- When “RESET” is selected, all remote control configurations will be cleared. You cannot select a specific key. Proceed to step 5.

#### 4 Press a key to which the selected process is applied.

**When “LEARN” or “PRESET” is selected:** press the input selection key or TV  $\text{⏻}$ .

**When “RENAME” is selected:** press the input selection key, RECEIVER  $\text{⏻}$ , TV  $\text{⏻}$  or SCENE.

**When “MACRO” is selected:** press the macro operation key (input selection key or RECEIVER  $\text{⏻}$ ).

#### 5 Hold down ENTER until “OK” appears on the window display.

If “NG” or “ERROR” appears, clearing failed. Repeat from step 2.

#### 6 To exit from the setup menu, press SETUP.

### ■ Erasing a function assigned to each key by learning

You can erase a function assigned to each key by learning and restore the default key assignments.

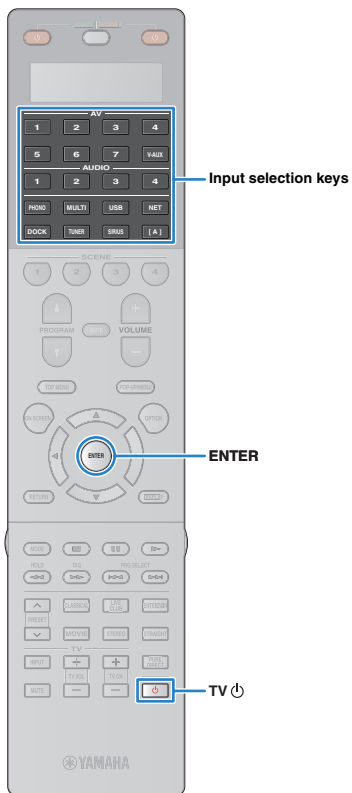
#### 1 Press SETUP.

Perform each of the following steps within 30 seconds.

Otherwise, the setting will be canceled. In this case, repeat from step 1.

#### 2 Use the cursor keys ( $\Delta/\nabla$ ) to select “ERASE” and press ENTER.





**3** Press one of the following keys to select the device for which key assignments will be cleared.

For playback device: press the input selection key.

For TV: press TV ⏻.

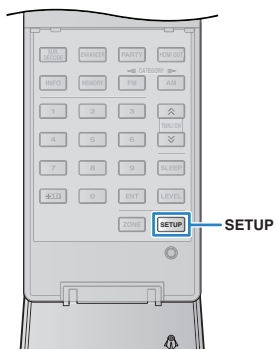
**4** Press ENTER.

**5** Hold down the key to be reset until “OK” appears on the window display.

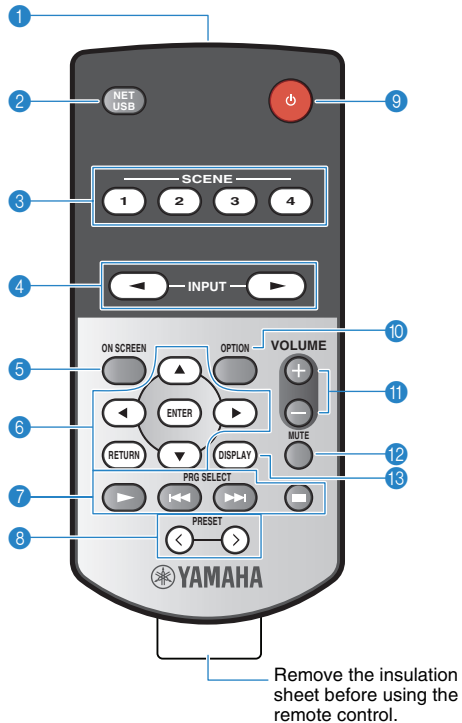
If “NG” or “ERROR” appears, clearing failed. Repeat from step 2.

**6** Repeat steps 3 to 5 until all desired key assignments are erased.

**7** To exit from the setup menu, press SETUP.



## Using the simplified remote control



- 1 Remote control signal transmitter**  
Transmits infrared signals.
- 2 NET/USB**  
Press repeatedly to select a desired network source or "USB".
- 3 SCENE**  
Selects the assigned input source, sound program, HDMI output and various settings at once. Additionally, you can turn on this unit when it is in standby mode (p.52).
- 4 INPUT**  
Selects an input source.
- 5 ON SCREEN**  
Displays the on-screen menu on the TV.
- 6 Menu operation keys**  
**Cursor keys** Select a menu or a parameter.  
**ENTER** Confirms a selected item.  
**RETURN** Returns to the previous screen.
- 7 External device operation keys**  
Operate playback of the iPod, USB storage device or network sources.  
Select an HD Radio audio program.
- 8 PRESET**  
Selects a preset FM/AM radio station (p.60).  
Selects a preset SIRIUS Satellite Radio channel (p.66).  
Selects a USB/network content from shortcuts (p.91).
- 9 (Power)**  
Turns on/off (standby) this unit.
- 10 OPTION**  
Displays the option menu (p.95).
- 11 VOLUME**  
Adjusts the volume.
- 12 MUTE**  
Mutes the audio output.
- 13 DISPLAY**  
Displays the status information on the TV (p.94).

### Switching the zones to operate with the simplified remote control

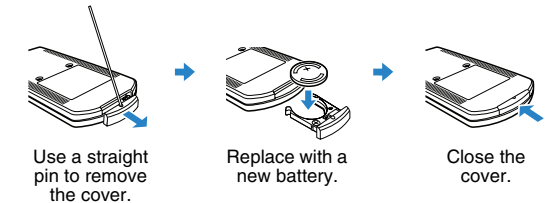
- Main zone: Hold down the cursor key (▷) and SCENE1 together for 3 seconds.
- Zone2: Hold down the cursor key (▷) and SCENE2 together for 3 seconds.
- Zone3: Hold down the cursor key (▷) and SCENE3 together for 3 seconds.

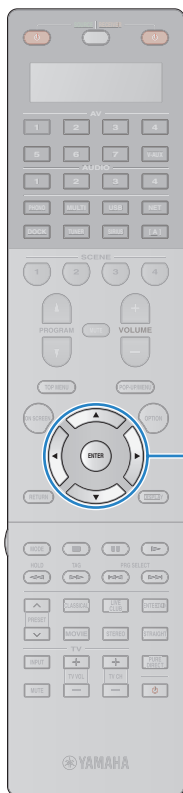
### Selecting the remote control ID

- ID1: Hold down the cursor key (◁) and SCENE1 together for 3 seconds.
- ID2: Hold down the cursor key (◁) and SCENE2 together for 3 seconds.

### Replacing the battery

Replace with a new battery (CR2025) when the operation range of the simplified remote control decreases.





Cursor keys  
ENTER

## Updating the firmware of this unit

If this unit is connected to the Internet, the corresponding message will be displayed on the TV when a newer firmware is available. In this case, follow the procedure below to update the firmware of this unit.

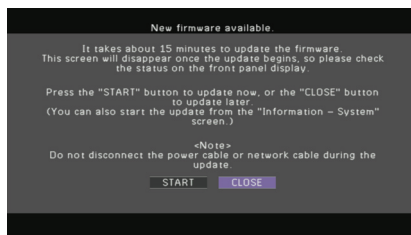
### Note

- Do not operate this unit or disconnect the power cable or network cable during firmware update. Firmware update takes about 15 minutes.




- You can also update the firmware using the USB memory device from the "ADVANCED SETUP" menu (p.127).

If the following message is displayed after ON SCREEN is pressed, firmware update is available.



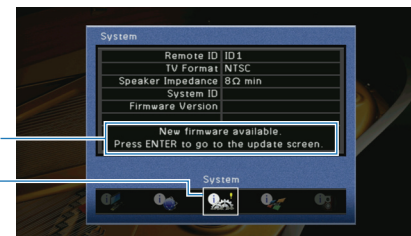
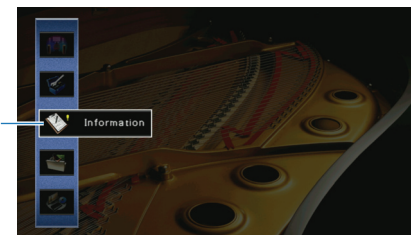
- Read the on-screen description.
- To start the firmware update, use the cursor keys to select "START" and press ENTER. The on-screen display turns off.

- If "UPDATE SUCCESS PLEASE POWER OFF!" appears on the front display, press MAIN ZONE  on the front panel.

The firmware update is complete.



- If you want to update the firmware later, select "CLOSE" in step 2. In this case, "!" (exclamation mark) appears at the upper right of the "Information" and "System" icons, and the corresponding message will be displayed in the "System" screen (p.124). You can update the firmware of this unit by pressing ENTER in the "System" screen.



# APPENDIX

## Frequently asked questions

### **The new speaker system does not provide an ideal sound balance...**

If you have changed speakers or speaker system, use “Auto Setup” to optimize the speaker settings again (p.44). If you want to adjust the speaker settings manually, use “Manual Setup” in the “Setup” menu (p.109).

### **Since we have small children, we want to set limitations on the volume control...**

If a small child, etc. accidentally operates the controls on the main unit or remote control, the volume may suddenly increase. And this may cause injury or damage this unit or speakers. We recommend using “Max Volume” in the “Setup” menu to set the maximum volume level for this unit in advance (p.113). You can also set the maximum volume for Zone2 or Zone3 (p.118).

### **I am occasionally startled by a sudden large sound when turning on this unit...**

By default, the volume level when this unit last entered standby mode is automatically applied. If you want to fix the volume, use “Initial Volume” to set the volume to be applied when this receiver is turned on (p.113). You can also set the initial volume for Zone2 or Zone3 (p.118).

### **I made HDMI connections but HDMI Control does not work at all...**

To use HDMI Control, you need to perform the HDMI Control link setup (p.150). After connecting HDMI Control-compatible devices (TV, BD/DVD players, etc.) to this unit, enable HDMI Control on each device and perform the HDMI Control link setup. This setup is required every time when you add a new HDMI Control-compatible device to your system. For information on how HDMI Control works between your TV and playback devices, refer to the instruction manuals of each device.

### **I want to turn off the onscreen messages displayed during operations...**

By default, short messages are displayed on the TV screen when this unit is operated (input selection, volume adjustment, etc). In case that the short messages bother you when you are watching movies or sports, configure “Short Message” (p.121) in the “Setup” menu to turn off the short messages.

### **I want to prevent accidental changes to the settings...**

You can protect the settings configured on this unit (speaker settings, etc.) by utilizing “Memory Guard” in the “Setup” menu (p.122).

### **The web control screen (p.92) becomes inaccessible...**

If you are using a DHCP server, the IP address of this unit may change each time this unit is turned on. Check the IP address of this unit in “Network” (p.124) in the “Information” menu. Also, if you have enabled “MAC Address Filter” (p.118), you need to specify the MAC address of your PC in “Address Setup” (p.118) to allow the PC to access this unit. For information on how to check the MAC address of your PC, refer to the instruction manuals of it.

### **The supplied remote control concurrently controls this unit and another Yamaha product that is not intended...**

When using multiple Yamaha products, the supplied remote control may work on another Yamaha product or another remote control may work on this unit. In this case, set each remote control with a unique remote control ID for its corresponding receiver (p.125).

## Troubleshooting



Refer to the table below when this unit does not function properly.

If the problem you are experiencing is not listed below, or if the instructions below do not help, turn off this unit, disconnect the power cable, and contact the nearest authorized Yamaha dealer or service center.

**First, check the followings:**

- ① **The power cables of this unit, TV and playback devices (BD/DVD player, etc.) are connected to AC outlets securely.**
- ② **This unit, subwoofer, TV and playback devices (BD/DVD player, etc.) are turned on.**
- ③ **The connectors of each cable are inserted to jacks on each devices securely.**

### Power and system

Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>The power does not turn on.</b>	The protection circuitry has been activated 3 times consecutively.	As a safety precaution, capability to turn on the power is disabled. Contact your nearest Yamaha dealer or service center to request repair.
<b>The power does not turn off.</b>	The internal microcomputer is hung-up due to an external electric shock (such as lightning and excessive static electricity) or by a drop in power supply voltage.	Hold down MAIN ZONE  on the front panel for more than 10 seconds to initialize and reboot this unit.
<b>The power turns off (standby mode) immediately.</b>	This unit was turned on while a speaker cable was shorted.	Twist the bare wires of each speaker cable firmly and reconnect to this unit and speakers (p.20).
<b>The unit enters standby mode automatically.</b>	The sleep timer worked.	Turn on the unit and start playback again.
	Since this unit was not operated for the specified time, auto-standby worked.	To disable auto-standby, set "Auto Power Down" in the "Setup" menu to "Off" (p.120).
	The speaker impedance setting is incorrect.	Set the speaker impedance to match your speakers (p.125).
<b>The unit enters standby mode automatically.</b>	The protection circuitry has been activated because of a short circuit.	Twist the bare wires of each speaker cable firmly and reconnect to this unit and speakers (p.20).
	The internal microcomputer is hung-up due to an external electric shock (such as lightning and excessive static electricity) or by a drop in power supply voltage.	Hold down MAIN ZONE  on the front panel for more than 10 seconds to initialize and reboot this unit.

## Audio

Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>No sound.</b>	Another input source is selected.	Select an appropriate input source with the input selection keys
	Signals that this unit cannot reproduce are being input.	Some digital audio formats cannot be played back on this unit. To check the audio format of the input signal, use "Audio Signal" in the "Information" menu (p.123).
	The cable connecting this unit and playback device is defective.	If there is no problem with the connection, replace with another cable.
<b>The volume cannot be increased.</b>	The maximum volume is set.	Use "Max Volume" in the "Setup" menu to adjust the maximum volume (p.113).
	Any device connected to the output jacks of this unit is not turned on. (This may happen due to the nature of AV receivers.)	Turn on all devices connected to the output jacks of this unit
<b>No sound is heard from a specific speaker.</b>	The playback source does not contain corresponding channel signals.	To check it, select "9ch Stereo" (p.54).
	The sound program/decoder currently selected does not use the corresponding speaker.	To check it, select "9ch Stereo" (p.54).
	Audio output of the corresponding speaker is disabled.	Perform "Auto Setup" (p.44) or use "Configuration" in the "Setup" menu to change the speaker setting (p.110).
	The volume of the corresponding speaker is too low.	Perform "Auto Setup" (p.44) or use "Level" in the "Setup" menu to adjust the speaker volume (p.111).
	The speaker cable connecting this unit and corresponding speaker is defective.	If there is no problem with the connection, replace with another speaker cable.
	The corresponding speaker is malfunctioning.	To check it, replacing with another speaker. If the problem persists, this unit may be malfunctioning.
<b>No sound is heard from the surround back speaker.</b>	The extended surround is disabled.	Use "Extended Surround" in the "Option" menu to select a decoder to be used (p.97).
<b>No sound is heard from the subwoofer.</b>	The playback source does not contain LFE or low-frequency signals.	To check it, set "Extra Bass" in the "Setup" menu to "On", to output the front channel low-frequency components from the subwoofer (p.111).
	Subwoofer output is disabled.	Perform "Auto Setup" (p.44) or set "Subwoofer 1" or "Subwoofer 2" in the "Setup" menu to "Use" (p.111).
	The subwoofer is turned off by the auto-standby function on it.	Disable the auto-standby function of the subwoofer or adjust its sensitivity level.
<b>No sound from the playback device (connected to this unit with HDMI).</b>	The TV does not support HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection).	To check it, use "Video Signal" in the "Information" menu (p.123).
	This unit is set not to output audio input through HDMI jacks from the SPEAKERS terminals.	In "Audio Output" in the "Setup" menu, set "Amp" to "On" (p.117).
	The number of devices connected to the HDMI OUT jack is over the limit.	Disconnect some of the HDMI devices.
<b>No sound from the TV (when HDMI Control is used).</b>	(If the TV is connected to this unit with an audio cable) The TV audio input setting does not match the actual connection.	Use "TV Audio Input" in the "Setup" menu to select the correct audio input jack (p.116).
	(If you are trying to use ARC) ARC is disabled on this unit or TV.	Set "ARC" in the "Setup" menu to "On" (p.116). Also, enable ARC on the TV.



Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>Only the front speakers work on multi-channel audio.</b>	The playback device is set to output 2-channel audio (PCM, etc.) only.	Change the digital audio output setting on the playback device.
<b>Noise/hum is heard.</b>	This unit is too close to other digital or radio frequency device.	Move this unit further away from such device.
	The cable connecting this unit and playback device is defective.	If there is no problem with the connection, replace with another cable.
<b>The sound is distorted.</b>	Any device connected to the output jacks of this unit is not turned on. (This may happen due to the nature of AV receivers.)	Turn on all devices connected to the output jacks of this unit

## Video

Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>No video.</b>	Another input source is selected on this unit.	Select an appropriate input source with the input selection keys
	Another input source is selected on the TV.	Switch the TV input to display the video from this unit.
	The video signal output from this unit is not supported by the TV.	Set "MONITOR CHECK" in the "ADVANCED SETUP" menu to "YES" (p.126).
	The cable connecting this unit and TV (or playback device) is defective.	If there is no problem with the connection, replace with another cable.
<b>No video from the playback device (connected to this unit with HDMI).</b>	The input video signal (resolution) is not supported by this unit.	To check the information about the current video signal (resolution), use "Video Signal" in the "Information" menu (p.123). For information about video signals supported by this unit, see "HDMI signal compatibility" (p.151).
	The TV does not support HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection).	To check it, use "Video Signal" in the "Information" menu (p.123).
	The number of devices connected to the HDMI OUT jack is over the limit.	Disconnect some of the HDMI devices.

## FM/AM radio

Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>FM radio reception is weak or noisy.</b>	There is multi-path interference.	Adjust the FM antenna height or orientation, or place it in a different location.
	Your area is too far from the FM station transmitter.	Press MODE to select "Mono" (monaural reception) (p.59). Use an outdoor FM antenna commercially available. We recommend using a sensitive multi-element antenna.
<b>AM radio reception is weak or noisy.</b>	The noises may be caused by fluorescent lamps, motors, thermostats, or other electrical equipment.	It is difficult to completely eliminate noise. It may be reduced by using an outdoor AM antenna commercially available and properly grounding. Connect it to the ANTENNA (AM/GND) jack together with the supplied AM antenna.
<b>Radio stations cannot be selected automatically.</b>	Your area is too far from the FM station transmitter.	Select the station manually (p.59).
		Use an outdoor antenna commercially available. We recommend using a sensitive multi-element antenna.
	The AM radio signal is weak.	Adjust the AM antenna orientation.
		Select the station manually (p.59). Use an outdoor AM antenna commercially available. Connect it to the ANTENNA (AM/GND) jack together with the supplied AM antenna.
<b>AM radio stations cannot be registered as presets.</b>	"Auto Preset" has been used.	"Auto Preset" is for registering FM radio stations and HD Radio stations only. Register AM radio stations manually (p.59).
<b>This unit does not receive HD Radio signals.</b>	This unit is in the monaural reception mode.	Press MODE to select "Auto" (p.59).
<b>iTunes Tagging data cannot be transferred to an iPod.</b>	The iPod is connected to this unit via an iPod dock "YDS-10" or an iPod wireless system.	The iPod dock "YDS-10" and iPod wireless system do not support tag data transfer. To transfer tag data, use the USB cable supplied with the iPod, or an iPod dock "YDS-12" or "YDS-11".

## USB and network

Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>This unit does not detect the USB device.</b>	The USB cable connecting this unit and USB device is not compliant with USB 2.0.	Use a USB cable compliant with USB 2.0.
<b>Folders and files in the USB device cannot be viewed.</b>	The folder structure not supported by this unit is applied.	This unit supports folder hierarchies of up to 8 levels and up to 500 items (total of files and subfolders) per folder. If necessary, modify the folder structure on your USB device.
<b>The network feature does not function.</b>	The network parameters (IP address) is not obtained properly.	Enable the DHCP server function on your router and set "DHCP" in the "Setup" menu to "On" on this unit (p.117). If you want to configure the network parameters manually, make sure using an IP address which is not used by other network devices in your network (p.117).

Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>This unit does not detect the PC.</b>	The media sharing setting is not correct.	Configure the sharing setting and select this unit as a device to which music contents are shared (p.80).
	Some security software installed on your PC is blocking the access of this unit to your PC.	Check the settings of security software installed on your PC.
	This unit and PC are not in the same network.	Check the network connections and the settings of your router to connect them to the same network.
<b>The files in the PC cannot be viewed or played back.</b>	The files are not supported by this unit or the media server.	Use the file format supported by both this unit and the media server. For information about the file formats supported by this unit, see "Playing back music stored on PCs" (p.80).
<b>The Internet radio cannot be played.</b>	The selected Internet radio station is currently not available.	It may not be available to listen because there might be a network problem, or the station might be broadcasting in limited hour. Try the station later or select another station.
	The selected Internet radio station broadcasts audio silence currently.	Some Internet radio stations broadcast audio silence during particular periods of time in a day. Try the station later or select another station.
	Access to the network is restricted by the firewall settings of your network devices (router, etc).	Check the firewall settings of your network devices. The Internet radio can be played only when it passes through the port designated by each radio station. The port number is variable depending on radio station.

## Remote control

Problem	Cause	Remedy
<b>This unit cannot be controlled using the remote control.</b>	Out of the operating range.	Use the remote control in the operating range (p.5).
	The batteries are weak.	Replace with new batteries.
	Direct sunlight or lighting is striking the remote control sensor of this unit.	Adjust the lighting angle, or reposition this unit.
	The remote control is set to control external devices.	Press SOURCE/RECEIVER to set the remote control to control this unit (the key lights up in orange).
	The remote control IDs of the main unit and remote control are not identical.	Change the remote control ID of the main unit or remote control (p.125).
<b>External devices cannot be controlled using the remote control.</b>	The remote control is set to control this unit.	Press SOURCE/RECEIVER to set the remote control to control external devices (the key lights up in green).
	The corresponding remote control code is not set properly.	Set the remote control code again (p.128). Even if the remote control code is registered properly set, some products may not respond to the remote control.
<b>The remote control does not learn new functions.</b>	The batteries of the remote control of this unit and/or the external device are weak.	Replace with new batteries.
	The distance between the two remote controls is not appropriate.	Place the remote controls at a proper distance (p.130).
	The signal coding or modulation of the other remote control is not compatible with this remote control.	Learning is impossible in this case.
	Memory capacity is full.	Clear unnecessary assignments to free some memory space for the new functions (p.134).

## Error indications on the front display

Message (alphabetical order)	Cause	Remedy
<b>Access denied</b>	Access to the PC is denied.	Configure the sharing setting and select this unit as a device to which music contents are shared (p.80).
<b>Access error</b>	This unit cannot access the USB device.	Turn off this unit and reconnect your USB device. If the problem persists, try another USB device.
	This unit cannot access the iPod connected to the USB jack.	Turn off the iPod and turn on it again.
	There is a problem with the signal path from the network to this unit.	Make sure your router and modem are turned on. Check the connection between this unit and your router (or hub) (p.40).
<b>No device</b>	This unit cannot detect the USB device.	Turn off this unit and reconnect your USB device. If the problem persists, try another USB device.
	This unit cannot detect the iPod connected to the USB jack.	Turn off the iPod and turn on it again.
<b>Not found</b>	The Bluetooth component is not found.	(When pairing) Turn on the Bluetooth component and set it in pairing mode.
		(When establishing a wireless connection) - Turn on the Bluetooth component. - Place the Bluetooth component within 10 m (32 ft) of the Bluetooth receiver. - Perform pairing again.
<b>Unknown iPod</b>	The connected iPod is not supported by the unit.	Use an iPod supported by this unit (p.70).
<b>Unable to play</b>	The unit cannot play back the songs stored on the iPod for some reasons.	Check the song data. If it cannot be played on the iPod itself, the song data or storage area may be defective.
	The unit cannot play back the songs stored on the PC for some reasons.	Check if the format of files you are trying to play is supported by this unit. For information about the formats supported by this unit, see "Playing back music stored on PCs" (p.80). If this unit cannot play back any files, the network may be overloaded with heavy traffic, and playback is interrupted.
<b>USB Overloaded</b>	Over current passes through the USB device.	Turn off this unit and reconnect your USB device. If the problem persists, try another USB device.

## Error indications for SIRIUS Satellite Radio™

Message (alphabetical order)	Cause	Remedy
<b>ACQUIRING SIG</b>	The signal is too weak.	Adjust the orientation of the antenna of the SiriusConnect tuner by checking the antenna reception level displayed in the front display (p.67) or TV (p.67).
<b>ANTENNA ERROR</b>	The antenna is not connected to the SiriusConnect tuner properly.	Check the connection of the antenna and SiriusConnect tuner (p.64).
<b>CALL SIRIUS</b>	The selected channel is not currently subscribed.	To subscribe the selected channel, contact SIRIUS Satellite Radio. URL: <a href="https://activate.siriusradio.com/">https://activate.siriusradio.com/</a> Phone: 1-888-539-SIRIUS (1-888-539-7474)
<b>CHECK SR TUNER</b>	The SiriusConnect tuner is not connected to this unit or AC wall outlet properly.	Check the connection of the SiriusConnect tuner and this unit or AC wall outlet (p.64). SiriusConnect tuner to the AC wall outlet.
<b>INVALID CH</b>	The selected channel is currently out of service.	Try another channel.
<b>NOT SUPPORTED</b>	This unit does not support the connected SIRIUS Satellite Radio tuner.	Use the SiriusConnect tuner supported by this unit.

## Error indications for iTunes Tagging

Message (alphabetical order)	Cause	Remedy
<b>Insufficient Data</b>	Tagging is not available because the selected HD Radio program (or song being played) does not support iTunes Tagging.	There is no problem.
<b>iPod full Tags cannot be stored</b>	Tag data cannot be stored on the iPod because the storage area is full.	Delete unnecessary data from your iPod with iTunes and try again.
<b>Tag Already Stored</b>	Tag data for the same content has been already stored.	There is no problem.
<b>Tag Storage full</b>	Tag data cannot be stored on this unit because the internal memory is full.	Connect your iPod to this unit via an iPod dock to transfer the tag data to the iPod.
<b>Transferring Failed</b>	Tag data cannot be transferred to the iPod.	Check if the iPod is connected to the iPod dock (YDS-12 or YDS-11) properly.

## Audio information

### Audio and video synchronization (Lipsync)

Lip sync, an abbreviation for lip synchronization, is a technical term that involves both a problem, and the capability of maintaining audio and video signals synchronized during post-production and transmission.

Whereas the audio and video latency requires complex end-user adjustment, HDMI version 1.3 incorporates an automatic audio and video syncing capability that allows devices to perform this synchronization automatically and accurately without user interaction.

### Bi-amplification connection (Bi-amp)

A bi-amplification connection uses two amplifiers for a speaker. One amplifier is connected to the woofer section of a loudspeaker while the other is connected to the combined mid and tweeter section. With this arrangement each amplifier operates over a restricted frequency range. This restricted range presents each amplifier with a much simpler job and each amplifier is less likely to influence the sound in some way.

### CINEMA DSP

Since the Dolby Surround and DTS systems were originally designed for use in movie theaters, their effect is best felt in a theater having many speakers designed for acoustic effects. Since home conditions, such as room size, wall material, number of speakers, and so on, can differ so widely, it is inevitable that there are differences in the sound that is heard. Based on a wealth of actually measured data, Yamaha CINEMA DSP uses Yamaha's original DSP technology to combine Dolby Pro Logic, Dolby Digital, and DTS systems to provide the audiovisual experience of a movie theater in the listening room of your own home.

### CINEMA DSP 3D

The actually measured sound field data contain the information of the height of the sound images. CINEMA DSP 3D feature achieves the reproduction of the accurate height of the sound images so that it creates the accurate and intensive stereoscopic sound fields in a listening room.

### Compressed Music Enhancer

The Compressed Music Enhancer feature of this unit enhances your listening experience by regenerating the missing harmonics in compression artifacts. As a result, it compensates for flattened complexity due to the loss of high-frequency fidelity as well as lack of bass due to the loss of low-frequency bass, providing improved performance for the overall sound system.

### Dolby Digital

Dolby Digital is a digital surround sound system that gives you completely independent multi-channel audio. With 3 front channels (front L/R and center), and 2 surround stereo channels, Dolby Digital provides 5 full-range audio channels. With an additional channel especially for bass effects, referred to as LFE (Low-Frequency Effect), the system has a total of 5.1-channels (LFE is counted as 0.1 channel). By using 2-channel stereo for the surround speakers, more accurate moving sound effects and surround sound environments are possible than with Dolby Surround. The wide dynamic range from maximum to minimum volumes that are reproduced by the 5 full-range channels, and the precise sound orientation generated using digital sound processing provides listeners with unprecedented excitement and realism. With this unit, any sound environment from monaural up to a 5.1-channel configuration can be freely selected for your enjoyment.

### Dolby Digital Plus

Dolby Digital Plus is an advanced audio technology developed for highdefinition programming and BD (Blu-ray disc). Selected as an optional audio standard for BD, this technology delivers multichannel sound with discrete channel output. Supporting bitrates up to 6.0 Mbps, Dolby Digital Plus can carry up to 7.1 discrete audio channels simultaneously. Supported by HDMI version 1.3 and designed for the optical disc players and AV receivers/amplifiers of the future, Dolby Digital Plus also remains fully compatible with the existing multichannel audio systems that incorporate Dolby Digital.

### Dolby Pro Logic II

Dolby Pro Logic II is an improved technique used to decode vast numbers of existing Dolby Surround sources. This new technology enables a discrete 5-channel playback with 2 front left and right channels, 1 center channel, and 2 surround left and right channels, instead of only 1 surround channel for conventional Pro Logic technology. There are three modes available: "Music mode" for music sources, "Movie mode" for movie sources, and "Game mode" for game sources.

### Dolby Pro Logic IIx

Dolby Pro Logic IIx is a new technology enabling discrete multichannel playback from 2-channel or multi-channel sources. There are three modes available: "Music mode" for music sources, "Movie mode" for movie sources (for 2-channel sources only) and "Game mode" for game sources.

### Dolby Surround

Dolby Surround uses a 4-channel analog recording system to reproduce realistic and dynamic sound effects: 2 front left and right channels (stereo), a center channel for dialog (monaural), and a surround channel for special sound effects (monaural). The surround channel reproduces sound within a narrow frequency range. Dolby Surround is widely used with nearly all video tapes and laser discs, as well as in many TV and cable broadcasts. The Dolby Pro Logic decoder built into this unit employs a digital signal processing system that automatically stabilizes the volume on each channel to enhance moving sound effects and directionality.

### Dolby TrueHD

Dolby TrueHD is an advanced lossless audio technology developed for high-definition disc-based media including Blu-ray Disc. Selected as an optional audio standard for BD (Blu-ray disc), this technology delivers sound that is bit-for-bit identical to the studio master, offering a high-definition home theater experience. Supporting bitrates up to 18.0 Mbps, Dolby TrueHD can carry up to 8 discrete channels of 24-bit/96 kHz audio simultaneously. Dolby TrueHD also remains fully compatible with the existing multichannel audio systems and retains the metadata capability of Dolby Digital, allowing dialog normalization and dynamic range control.

### DTS 96/24

DTS 96/24 offers an unprecedented level of audio quality for multichannel sound on DVD video, and is fully backward-compatible with all DTS decoders. "96" refers to a 96 kHz sampling rate compared to the typical 48 kHz sampling rate. "24" refers to 24-bit word length. DTS 96/24 offers sound quality transparent to the original 96/24 master, and 96/24 5.1-channel sound with full-quality full-motion video for music programs and motion picture soundtracks on DVD video.

## DTS Digital Surround

DTS Digital Surround was developed to replace the analog soundtracks of movies with a 5.1-channel digital sound track, and is now rapidly gaining popularity in movie theaters around the world. DTS, Inc. has developed a home theater system so that you can enjoy the depth of sound and natural spatial representation of DTS Digital Surround in your home. This system produces practically distortion-free 5.1-channel sound (technically, left, right and center channels, 2 surround channels, plus an LFE 0.1 channel as a subwoofer, for a total of 5.1-channels). This unit incorporates a DTS-ES decoder that enables 6.1-channel reproduction by adding the surround back channel to the existing 5.1-channel format.

## DTS Express

This is an audio format for next-generation optical discs such as BD (Blu-ray disc). It uses optimized low bit rate signals for network streaming. In the case of a BD, this format is used with secondary audio, enabling you to enjoy the commentary of the movie producer via the Internet while playing the main program.

## DTS-HD High Resolution Audio

DTS-HD High Resolution Audio is a high resolution audio technology developed for high-definition disc-based media including BD (Blu-ray disc). Selected as an optional audio standard for BD, this technology delivers sound that is virtually indistinguishable from the original, offering a high-definition home theater experience. Supporting bitrates up to 6.0 Mbps for BD, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio can carry up to 7.1 discrete channels of 24-bit/96 kHz audio simultaneously. DTS-HD High Resolution Audio also remains fully compatible with the existing multichannel audio systems that incorporate DTS Digital Surround.

## DTS-HD Master Audio

DTS-HD Master Audio is an advanced lossless audio technology developed for high-definition disc-based media including BD (Blu-ray disc). Selected as an optional audio standard for BD, this technology delivers sound that is bit-for-bit identical to the studio master, offering a high-definition home theater experience. Supporting bitrates up to 24.5 Mbps for BD, DTS-HD Master Audio can carry up to 7.1 discrete channels of 24-bit/96 kHz audio simultaneously. Supported by HDMI version 1.3 and designed for the optical disc players and AV receivers/amplifiers of the future, DTS-HD Master Audio also remains fully compatible with the existing multichannel audio systems that incorporate DTS Digital Surround.

## DSD

Direct Stream Digital (DSD) technology stores audio signals on digital storage media, such as Super Audio CDs. Using DSD, signals are stored as single bit values at a high-frequency sampling rate of 2.8224 MHz, while noise shaping and oversampling are used to reduce distortion, a common occurrence with very high quantization of audio signals. Due to the high sampling rate, better audio quality can be achieved than that offered by the PCM format used for normal audio CDs. The frequency is equal to or higher than 100 kHz, with a dynamic range of 120 dB. This unit can transmit or receive DSD signals via the HDMI jack.

## FLAC

This is a file format for lossless audio data compression. FLAC is inferior to lossy compression formats in compression rate but provides higher audio quality.

## LFE 0.1 channel

This channel reproduces low-frequency bass signals, and has a frequency range from 20 Hz to 120 Hz. This channel is counted as 0.1, because it only enforces a low-frequency range compared to the full-range reproduced by the other 5-channels in Dolby Digital or DTS 5.1-channel systems.

## MP3

One of the audio compression methods used by MPEG. It employs the irreversible compression method, which achieves a high compression rate by thinning out the data of hardly audible part to the human ears. It is said to be capable of compressing the data quantity by about 1/11 (128 kbps) while maintaining a similar audio quality to music CD.

## MPEG-4 AAC

An MPEG-4 audio standard. As it allows compression of data at a bit rate lower than that of MPEG-2 AAC, it is used among others for mobile telephones, portable audio players and other low-capacity devices requiring high sound quality. In addition to the above types of devices, MPEG-4 AAC is also used to distribute contents on the Internet, and as such is supported by computers, media servers and many other devices.

## Neo:6

Neo:6 decodes the conventional 2-channel sources for 6-channel playback by the specific decoder. It enables playback with the full-range channels with higher separation just like digital discrete signal playback. There are two modes available: "Music mode" for music sources and "Cinema mode" for movie sources.

## PCM (Linear PCM)

Linear PCM is a signal format under which an analog audio signal is digitized, recorded and transmitted without using any compression. This is used as a method of recording CDs and DVD audio. The PCM system uses a technique for sampling the size of the analog signal per very small unit of time. Standing for "Pulse Code Modulation," the analog signal is encoded as pulses and then modulated for recording.

## Sampling frequency and number of quantized bits

When digitizing an analog audio signal, the number of times the signal is sampled per second is called the sampling frequency, while the degree of accuracy when converting the sound level into a numeric value is called the number of quantized bits. The range of rates that can be played back is determined based on the sampling rate, whereas the dynamic range representing the sound level difference is determined by the number of quantized bits. In principle, the higher the sampling frequency, the wider the range of frequencies that can be played back, and the higher the number of quantized bits, the more accurately the sound level can be reproduced.

## SILENT CINEMA

Yamaha has developed a natural, realistic sound effect DSP algorithm for headphones. Parameters for headphones have been set for each sound program, so that accurate representations of all the sound programs can be enjoyed on headphones.

## Virtual CINEMA DSP

Yamaha has developed a Virtual CINEMA DSP algorithm that allows you to enjoy DSP surround effects even without any surround speakers, by using virtual surround speakers. It is even possible to enjoy Virtual CINEMA DSP using a minimal two-speaker system that does not include a center speaker.

## WAV

Windows standard audio file format, which defines the method of recording the digital data obtained by converting audio signals. It does not specify the compression (coding) method so a desired compression method can be used with it. By default, it is compatible with the PCM method (no compression) and some compression methods including the ADPCM method.

## WMA

An audio compression method developed by Microsoft Corporation. It employs the irreversible compression method, which achieves a high compression rate by thinning out the data of hardly audible part to the human ears. It is said to be capable of compressing the data quantity by about 1/22 (64 kbps) while maintaining a similar audio quality to music CD.

# Video information

---

## Component video signal

With the component video signal system, the video signal is separated into the Y signal for luminance and the Pb and Pr signals for chrominance. Color can be reproduced more faithfully with this system because each of these signals is independent. The component signal is also called the "color difference signal" because the luminance signal is subtracted from the color signal. A monitor with component input jacks is required in order to output component signals.

## Composite video signal

With the composite video signal system, the video signal comprises the three basic elements of a video picture: color, brightness and synchronization data. A composite video jack on a video component transmits these three elements combined.

## Deep Color

Deep Color refers to the use of various color depths in displays, up from the 24-bit depths in previous versions of the HDMI specification. This extra bit depth allows HDTVs and other displays increase from millions of colors to billions of colors and eliminate on-screen color banding for smooth tonal transitions and subtle gradations between colors. The increased contrast ratio can represent many times more shades of gray between black and white. Additionally, Deep Color increases the number of available colors within the boundaries defined by the RGB or YCbCr color space.

## HDMI

HDMI (High-Definition Multimedia Interface) is the first industry supported, uncompressed, all-digital audio/video interface. Providing an interface between any sources (such as set-top boxes or AV receivers) and audio/video monitors (such as digital televisions), HDMI supports standard, enhanced or high-definition video as well as multichannel digital audio using a single cable. HDMI transmits all ATSC HDTV standards and supports 8-channel digital audio, with bandwidth to spare to accommodate future enhancements and requirements.

When used in combination with HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection), HDMI provides a secure audio/video interface that meets the security requirements of content providers and system operators. For further information on HDMI, visit the HDMI website at "<http://www.hdmi.org/>."

## S-video signal

With the S-video signal system, the video signal normally transmitted using a pin cable is separated and transmitted as the Y signal for the luminance and the C signal for the chrominance through the S-video cable. Using the S VIDEO jack eliminates video signal transmission loss and allows recording and playback of even more beautiful images.

## "x.v.Color"

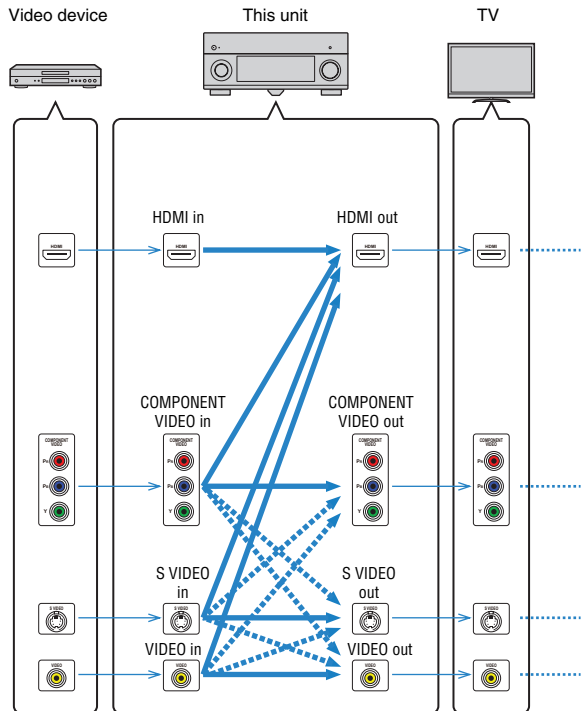
A color space standard supported by HDMI version 1.3. It is a more extensive color space than sRGB, and allows the expression of colors that were not hitherto possible. While remaining compatible with the color gamut of sRGB standards, "x.v.Color" expands the color space, and can thus produce more vivid, natural images. It is particularly effective for still pictures and computer graphics.



## Video signal flow

Video signals input from a video device to this unit are output to a TV as shown below.

→ (solid line) is always available. → (dotted line) is available only when "Analog to Analog Conversion" (p.114) in the "Setup" menu is set to "On" (default).



## Video conversion table



- You can select a resolution and an aspect ratio applied to HDMI-output video processing.
- This unit does not convert 480-line and 576-line video signals interchangeably.

	Resolution	HDMI out					COMPONENT VIDEO out				S VIDEO out	VIDEO out
		480i/576i	480p/576p	720p	1080i	1080p	480i/576i	480p/576p	720p	1080i	480i/576i	480i/576i
HDMI in	480i/576i	→	→	→	→	→						
	480p/576p		→	→	→	→						
	720p		→	→	→	→						
	1080i		→	→	→	→						
	1080p		→	→	→	→						
COMPONENT VIDEO in	480i/576i	→	→	→	→	→					→	→
	480p/576p		→	→	→	→	→					
	720p		→	→	→	→		→				
	1080i		→	→	→	→			→			
S VIDEO in	480i/576i	→	→	→	→	→					→	→
VIDEO in	480i/576i	→	→	→	→	→					→	→

## Information on HDMI

### HDMI Control

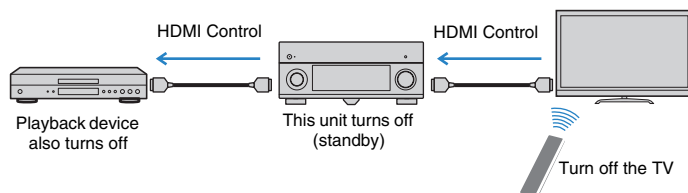
HDMI Control allows you to operate external devices via HDMI. If you connect a TV that supports HDMI Control to this unit with an HDMI cable, you can control this unit (power, volume, etc.) in conjunction with TV remote control operations. You can also control playback devices (HDMI Control-compatible BD/DVD players, etc.) connected to this unit with an HDMI cable.

For details on connections, see “Connecting a TV” (p.29) and “Connecting video devices (BD/DVD players, etc.)” (p.35).

#### Operations available from the TV's remote control

- Standby synchronization
- Volume control including mute
- Switching to input audio from the TV when the TV input is switched to its built-in tuner
- Switching to input video/audio from the selected playback device and output the video to the TV
- Switching between audio output devices (this unit or TV speaker)

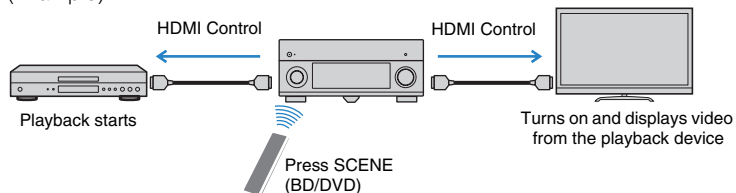
(Example)



#### Operations available from this unit's remote control

- Starting playback on the playback device and turning on the TV in conjunction with a scene selection (p.52)
- Switching the TV input to display the on-screen menu (when ON SCREEN is pressed)
- Controlling the playback device (playback and menu operations) without registering remote control codes (p.128)

(Example)



To use HDMI Control, you need to perform the following HDMI Control link setup after connecting the TV and playback devices.



- This setup is required every time when you add a new HDMI Control-compatible device to your system.
- To use HDMI Control, connect the TV to the HDMI OUT 1 jack.

#### 1 Turn on this unit, TV and playback devices.

#### 2 Enable HDMI Control on this unit, TV and playback devices (HDMI Control-compatible BD/DVD players, etc).

To enable HDMI Control on this unit, set “HDMI Control” (p.116) in the “Setup” menu to “On” and configure the related items (“TV Audio Input”, “ARC” and “Standby Sync”).

#### 3 Turn off the main power of the TV and then turn off this unit and playback devices.

#### 4 Turn on this unit and playback devices and then turn on the main power of the TV.

#### 5 Switch the TV input to display the video from this unit.

#### 6 Check the followings.

On this unit: The input to which the playback device is connected is selected. If not, select the input source manually.

On the TV: The video from the playback device is displayed.

#### 7 Check that this unit is properly synchronized with the TV by turning off the TV or adjusting the TV volume with the TV remote control.



- If HDMI Control does not work properly, try unplugging the TV in step 2 and re-plugging the TV in step 3. It may solve the problem. Also, HDMI Control may not work if the number of connected devices is over the limit. In this case, disable HDMI Control on the devices not in use.
- If the unit is not synchronized to the TV's power operations, check the priority of the audio output setting on the TV.
- We recommend using TV and playback devices from the same manufacturer so that HDMI Control works more effectively.

# HDMI signal compatibility

## Audio signals

Audio signal type	Audio signal format	Compatible media (example)
2ch Linear PCM	2ch, 32 to 192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit	CD, DVD-Video, DVD-Audio
Multi-channel Linear PCM	8ch, 32 to 192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit	DVD-Audio, BD (Blu-ray disc), HD DVD
DSD	2/5.1ch, 2.8224 MHz, 1 bit	SACD
Bitstream	Dolby Digital, DTS	DVD-Video
Bitstream (High definition audio)	Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital Plus, DTS-HD Master Audio, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio, DTS Express	BD (Blu-ray disc), HD DVD

## Video signals

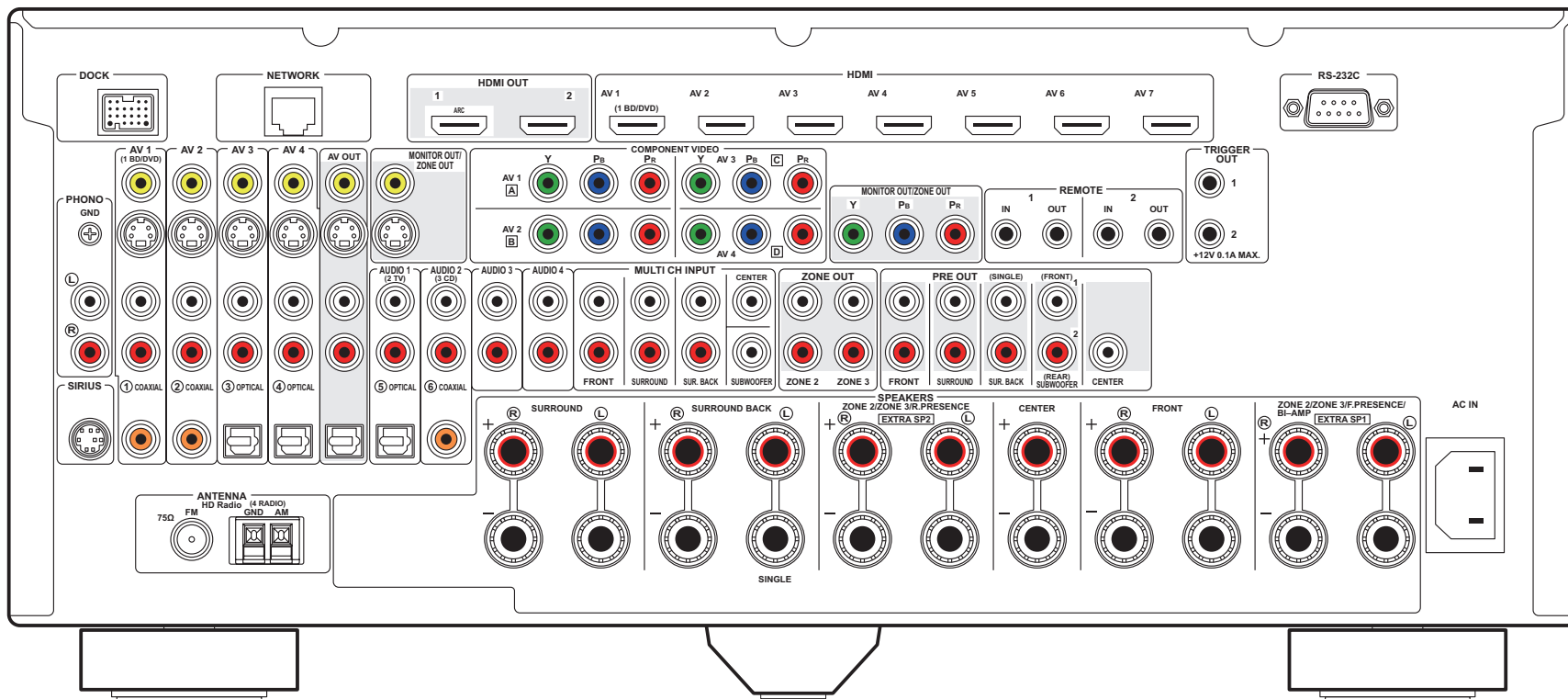
This unit is compatible with the video signals of the following resolutions:

- 480i/60 Hz
- 576i/50 Hz
- 480p/60 Hz
- 576p/50 Hz
- 720p/60 Hz, 50 Hz
- 1080i/60 Hz, 50 Hz
- 1080p/60 Hz, 50 Hz, 24 Hz



- When CPPM copy-protected DVD-Audio is played back, video/audio signals may not be output, depending on the type of the DVD player.
- This unit is not compatible with HDCP-incompatible HDMI or DVI devices. For details, refer to the instruction manual of each device.
- To decode audio bitstream signals on this unit, set the input source device appropriately so that the device outputs the bitstream audio signals directly (does not decode the bitstream signals on the playback device). For details, refer to the instruction manual of the playback device.
- This unit is not compatible with the audio commentary features (for example, the special audio contents downloaded via Internet) of BD or HD DVD. This unit does not playback the audio commentaries of the BD or HD DVD content.

## Reference diagram (rear panel)



- The area around the video/audio output jacks is marked in white on the actual product.

## Trademarks



Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Pro Logic and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.



Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent #'s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,226,616; 6,487,535; 7,212,872; 7,333,929; 7,392,195; 7,272,567 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks, & DTS-HD, DTS-HD Master Audio, and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

### iPod™, iPhone™

"Made for iPod" and "Made for iPhone" mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance.

iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.



**Fraunhofer** Institut  
Integrierte Schaltungen

MPEG Layer-3 audio coding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson.



This receiver supports network connections.



HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD, HD Radio, and "Arc" logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

### Bluetooth™

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG and is used by Yamaha in accordance with a license agreement.



"HDMI," the "HDMI" logo and "High-Definition Multimedia Interface" are trademarks, or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.

### x.v.Color™

"x.v.Color" is a trademark of Sony Corporation.



"SILENT CINEMA" is a trademark of Yamaha Corporation.



SIRIUS, XM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc. and its subsidiaries. All rights reserved. Service not available in Alaska and Hawaii.



DLNA Certified is a trademark of the Digital Living Network Alliance in the United States and other countries.



Windows is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Media Audio, Windows Media Connect and Windows Media Player are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

# Specifications

## Input jacks

- Analog Audio  
Audio x 10 (AV1~4, AUDIO1~4, PHONO, V-AUX)  
MULTI CH INPUT (8ch) x 1  
(FRONT L/R, CENTER, SURROUND L/R,  
SURROUND BACK L/R, SUBWOOFER)
- Digital Audio (Support fs: 32 kHz to 96 kHz)  
Optical x 4 (AV3~4, AUDIO1, V-AUX)  
Coaxial x 3 (AV1~2, AUDIO2)
- Video  
Composite x 5 (AV1~4, V-AUX)  
S-video x 5 (AV1~4, V-AUX)  
Component x 4 (AV1~4)
- HDMI Input  
HDMI (Front Panel) x 1 (V-AUX)  
HDMI (Rear Panel) x 7 (AV1~7)
- Other  
DOCK x 1 (Audio, Composite Video, S-video)  
USB x 1 (USB2.0)  
NETWORK x 1 (100Base-TX/10Base-T)

## Output jacks

- Analog Audio  
Speaker out x 11 (9 ch) (FRONT L/R, CENTER,  
SURROUND L/R, SURROUND BACK L/R, EXTRA SP1\*1,  
EXTRA SP2\*2)  
\*1 Note: assignment is possible.  
[ZONE2, ZONE3, F.PRESENCE, BI-AMP (FRONT L/R)]  
\*2 Note: assignment is possible.  
[ZONE2, ZONE3, R.PRESENCE]  
Pre Out x 7 (FRONT L/R, CENTER, SURROUND L/R,  
SURROUND BACK L/R)  
Subwoofer Out x 2  
(SUBWOOFER 1~2, Stereo/Front&Rear/Monox2)  
Audio x 1 (AV OUT)

- Digital Audio  
Optical x 1 (AV OUT)
- Video  
MONITOR OUT/ZONE OUT  
- Composite x 1  
- S-video x 1  
- Component x 1  
AV OUT  
- Composite x 1  
- S-video x 1
- HDMI Output  
HDMI OUT x 2 (HDMI OUT1~2)

## Remote jacks

- REMOTE IN x 2
- REMOTE OUT x 2
- TRIGGER OUT x 2
- RS-232C x 1

## HDMI

- HDMI Specification: Deep Color, "x.v.Color," Auto Lip Sync,  
HDMI Control (CEC), ARC (Audio Return Channel), 3D
- Video Format (Repeater Mode)
  - VGA
  - 480i/60 Hz
  - 576i/50 Hz
  - 480p/60 Hz
  - 576p/50 Hz
  - 720p/60 Hz, 50 Hz
  - 1080i/60 Hz, 50 Hz
  - 1080p/60 Hz, 50 Hz, 24 Hz

- Audio Format
  - Dolby Digital
  - DTS
  - DSD 6ch
  - Dolby Digital Plus
  - Dolby TrueHD
  - DTS-HD
  - PCM 2ch-8ch (Max 192 kHz/24 bit)
- Content Protection: HDCP compatible

## TUNER

- Analog Tuner  
[U.K. and Europe models]  
FM/AM with RDS x 1 (TUNER)  
[Other models]  
FM/AM x 1 (TUNER)
- HD Radio tuner with iTunes Tagging [U.S.A. model] x 1  
(TUNER)
- Satellite Radio Ready [U.S.A. model]  
SIRIUS Radio x 1 (SIRIUS)

## USB

- Capable of iPod, Mass Storage Class USB Memory, MTP  
(Media Transfer Protocol)
- Current Supply Capacity: 1 A

## Network

- PC Client Function
- Compatible with Windows 7, DLNA ver. 1.5
- Internet Radio

## Compatible Decoding Formats

- Decoding Format
  - Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital Plus
  - DTS-HD Master Audio, DTS-HD High Resolution, DTS Express
  - Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital EX
  - DTS, DTS 96/24, DTS-ES Matrix 6.1, DTS-ES Discrete 6.1
- Post Decoding Format
  - Dolby Pro Logic
  - Dolby Pro Logic II Music, Dolby Pro Logic II Movie, Dolby Pro Logic II Game
  - Dolby Pro Logic IIx Music, Dolby Pro Logic IIx Movie, Dolby Pro Logic IIx Game
  - DTS Neo:6 Music, DTS Neo:6 Cinema

## Audio Section

- Rated Output Power (20 Hz to 20 kHz, 0.06% THD, 8 $\Omega$ )
  - Front L/R ..... 140 W+140 W
  - Center ..... 140 W
  - Surround L/R ..... 140 W+140 W
  - Surround Back L/R ..... 140 W+140 W
  - Front Presence L/R ..... 140 W+140 W (1 kHz, 0.9% THD, 8 $\Omega$ )
  - Front L/R ..... 175 W/ch (155 W+155 W)
  - Center ..... 175 W/ch (155 W)
  - Surround L/R ..... 175 W/ch (155 W+155 W)
  - Surround Back L/R ..... 175 W/ch (155 W+155 W)
  - Front Presence L/R ..... 175 W/ch (155 W+155 W) (1 kHz, 0.9% THD, 4 $\Omega$ ) [U.K. and Europe models]
  - Front L/R ..... 220 W/ch
- Maximum Effective Output Power (JEITA, 1 kHz, 10% THD, 8  $\Omega$ ) [China, Korea, Asia and General models]
  - Front L/R ..... 220 W/ch
  - Center ..... 220 W/ch
  - Surround L/R ..... 220 W/ch
  - Surround Back L/R ..... 220 W/ch
  - Front Presence L/R ..... 220 W/ch

- Dynamic Power (IHF)
  - Front L/R (8/6/4/2  $\Omega$ ) ..... 165/210/285/405 W
- Damping Factor
  - Front L/R, 1 kHz, 8  $\Omega$  ..... 150 or more
- Input Sensitivity / Input Impedance
  - PHONO (1 kHz, 100 W/8  $\Omega$ ) ..... 3.5 mV/47 k $\Omega$
  - AUDIO2 etc. (1 kHz, 100 W/8  $\Omega$ ) ..... 200 mV/47 k $\Omega$
- Maximum Input Signal
  - PHONO (1 kHz, 0.5% THD) ..... 60 mV or more
  - AUDIO2 etc. (1 kHz, 0.5% THD) ..... 2.4 V or more
- Output Level / Output Impedance
  - AV OUT ..... 200 mV/1.2 k $\Omega$
  - HEADPHONE OUT ..... 150 mV/100  $\Omega$
  - PRE OUT
  - SUBWOOFER (50 Hz) ..... 1.0 V/1.2 k $\Omega$
  - Except SUBWOOFER (1 kHz) ..... 1.0 V/1.2 k $\Omega$
  - ZONE OUT ..... 1.0 V/1.2 k $\Omega$
- Frequency Response
  - AUDIO2 etc. to Front (Pure Direct, 10 kHz to 100 kHz) ..... +0/-3 dB
- RIAA Equalization Deviation
  - PHONO (20 Hz to 20 kHz) ..... 0 $\pm$ 0.5 dB
- Total Harmonic Distortion
  - PHONO to AV OUT ..... 0.02% or less
  - MULTI CH INPUT to SP OUT (Pure Direct, 70W, 8 $\Omega$ ) ..... 0.04% or less
- Signal to Noise Ratio (IHF-A Network)
  - PHONO to AV OUT (Input shorted 5 mV) [U.S.A., Canada, China and General models] ... 86 dB or more
  - [Other models] ..... 81 dB or more
  - AUDIO2 etc. to SP OUT (Pure Direct, Input shorted 250 mV) ..... 100 dB or more
- Residual Noise (IHF-A Network)
  - Front L/R (SP OUT) ..... 150  $\mu$ V or less
- Channel Separation
  - PHONO (Input Shorted, 1 kHz/10 kHz) ... 60 dB/55 dB or more
  - AUDIO2 etc. (Input 5.1 k $\Omega$  Shorted, 1 kHz/10 kHz) .... 60 dB/45 dB or more

- Volume Control
  - Main Zone ..... MUTE, -80 dB to +16.5dB (0.5 dB step)
  - Zone2, Zone3 ..... MUTE, -80 dB to +16.5dB (0.5 dB step)
- Tone Control Characteristics (Front L/R)
  - Main Zone
    - Bass Boost/Cut .....  $\pm$ 6.0 dB/50 Hz (0.5 dB step)
    - Bass Turnover ..... 350 Hz
    - Treble Boost/Cut .....  $\pm$ 6.0 dB/20 kHz (0.5 dB step)
    - Treble Turnover ..... 3.5 kHz
  - Zone2, Zone3
    - Bass Boost/Cut .....  $\pm$ 10 dB/50 Hz (2 dB step)
    - Bass Turnover ..... 350 Hz
    - Treble Boost/Cut .....  $\pm$ 10 dB/50 Hz (2 dB step)
    - Treble Turnover ..... 3.5 kHz
- Filter Characteristics (fc=40/60/80/90/100/110/120/160/200 Hz)
  - H.P.F. (Front, Center, Surround, Surround Back: Small) ..... 12 dB/oct.
  - L.P.F. (Subwoofer) ..... 24 dB/oct.

## Video Section

- Video Signal Type
  - [U.S.A., Canada, Korea and General models] ..... NTSC
  - [Other models] ..... PAL
- Video Signal Type (Video Conversion) ..... NTSC/PAL
- Video Signal Level
  - Composite ..... 1 Vp-p/75  $\Omega$
  - S-Video
    - Y ..... 1 Vp-p/75  $\Omega$
    - C (NTSC) [U.S.A., Canada, Korea and General models] ..... 0.286 Vp-p/75  $\Omega$
    - C (PAL) [Other models] ..... 0.3 Vp-p/75  $\Omega$
  - Component
    - Y ..... 1 Vp-p/75  $\Omega$
    - Pb/Pr ..... 0.7 Vp-p/75  $\Omega$
- Video Maximum Input Level (Video Conversion Off) ..... 1.5 Vp-p or more
- Signal to Noise Ratio (Video Conversion Off) .... 60 dB or more
- Monitor Out Frequency Response (Video Conversion Off)
  - Component (MONITOR OUT/ZONE OUT) ..... 5 Hz to 100 MHz,  $\pm$ 3 dB

## □ FM Section

- Tuning Range  
[U.S.A. and Canada models] ..... 87.5 MHz to 107.9 MHz  
[Asia and General models]  
..... 87.5/87.50 MHz to 108.0/108.00 MHz  
[Other models]..... 87.50 MHz to 108.00 MHz
- 50 dB Quiet Sensitivity (IHF, 1 kHz, 100% MOD.)  
Mono..... 3  $\mu$ V (20.8 dBf)
- Signal to Noise Ratio (IHF)  
Mono/Stereo [except U.S.A. model] ..... 72 dB/70 dB  
HD [U.S.A. model] ..... 80 dB
- Harmonic Distortion (IHF, 1 kHz)  
Mono/Stereo [except U.S.A. model] ..... 0.3%/0.5%  
HD [U.S.A. model] ..... 0.03%
- Antenna Input ..... 75  $\Omega$  unbalanced

## □ AM section

- Tuning Range  
[U.S.A. and Canada models] ..... 530 kHz to 1710 kHz  
[Asia and General models]..... 530/531 kHz to 1710/1611 kHz  
[Other models]..... 531 kHz to 1611 kHz

## □ General

- Power Supply  
[U.S.A. and Canada models] ..... AC 120 V, 60 Hz  
[General model] ..... AC 110-120/220-240 V, 50/60 Hz  
[China model] ..... AC 220 V, 50 Hz  
[Korea model] ..... AC 220 V, 60 Hz  
[Australia model] ..... AC 240 V, 50 Hz  
[U.K. and Europe models] ..... AC 230 V, 50 Hz  
[Asia model] ..... AC 220-240 V, 50/60 Hz
- Power Consumption  
[U.S.A. model] ..... 490 W/620 VA  
[Canada model] ..... 400 W/510 VA  
[Other models] ..... 490 W
- Standby Power Consumption  
HDMI Control Off / Standby Through Off ..... 0.3 W or less  
HDMI Control On / Standby Through On (Typical) ..... 2.7 W  
Network Standby On (Typical) ..... 2.5 W
- Maximum Power Consumption  
[Asia and General models] ..... 1210 W
- Dimensions (W x H x D) ..... 435 x 192 x 467 mm  
(17-1/8" x 7-1/2" x 18-3/8")
- Weight ..... 17.1 kg (37.7 lbs)

\* Specifications are subject to change without notice.





YAMAHA CORPORATION

© 2011 Yamaha Corporation  YD505A0/OMEN1

**List of remote control codes**  
**Liste des codes de commande**  
**Liste der Fernbedienungs-codes**  
**Lista över fjärrstyrningskoder**  
**Elenco dei codici di telecomando**  
**Lista de códigos de mando a distancia**

<b>TV</b>	
A.R. Systems	0320
Acme	0342
Acura	0323, 0343
ADC	0337
Admiral	0054, 0178, 0336, 0337, 0339, 0346, 0347
Advent	0158
Adventura	0057
Adyson	0277, 0282, 0342
Agashi	0277, 0282
Agazi	0337
Aiko	0277, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0342, 0343
Aim	0320
Aiwa	0078, 0379
Akai	0050, 0055, 0109, 0159, 0181, 0277, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0340, 0343, 0349, 0350
Akiba	0320, 0340
Akura	0320, 0323, 0337, 0340
Alaron	0277
Alba	0161, 0277, 0320, 0323, 0340, 0342, 0343, 0344, 0349, 0351, 0372, 0382
Albatron	0140
Alcyon	0171
Alleron	0059
Allorgan	0282
Allstar	0320, 0350
America Action	0179
AMOi	0276
Amplivision	0161, 0282, 0321, 0342
Amstrad	0320, 0323, 0337, 0340, 0343
Amtron	0058
Anam	0179, 0343
Anam National	0052, 0058
Anglo	0323, 0343
Anitech	0171, 0320, 0323, 0337, 0343
Ansonic	0161, 0168, 0320, 0323, 0341, 0343
AOC	0008, 0026, 0050, 0053
Apex	0039, 0111, 0217
Arcam	0277, 0282
Arcam Delta	0342
Aristona	0320, 0349, 0350
Arthur Martin	0321
ASA	0339, 0347
Asberg	0171, 0320, 0350
Astra	0343
Asuka	0277, 0282, 0337, 0340, 0342
Atlantic	0277, 0320, 0342, 0349, 0350
Atori	0323, 0343
Auchan	0321
Audiosonic	0161, 0282, 0320, 0340, 0342, 0343, 0349, 0350
AudioTon	0161, 0282, 0342
Audiovox	0058, 0179, 0194
Ausind	0171
Autovox	0171, 0282, 0337, 0339, 0342
Aventura	0051
Awa	0277, 0282
Axion	0156
Baird	0282
Bang & Olufsen	0180, 0339
Basic Line	0282, 0320, 0323, 0340, 0343, 0350
Bastide	0282, 0342

**Lijst met afstandsbedieningscodes**  
**Liste over fjernbetjeningskoder**  
**Liste over fjernkontrollkoder**  
**Список кодов дистанционного управления**  
**遥控器代码列表**  
**리모콘코드목록**

Baur	0320, 0349	Cathay	0320, 0349, 0350
Bazin	0282	CCE	0183, 0282
Beko	0161, 0269, 0294, 0302, 0311, 0320, 0328, 0351	Celebrity	0055, 0107
Belcor	0008	Celera	0039
Bell & Howell	0019, 0054	Centurion	0320, 0349, 0350
Benq	0097, 0242, 0361	Century	0339
Beon	0320, 0349, 0350	CGE	0161, 0171
Best	0161	Changhong	0039
Bestar	0161, 0320, 0350	Chimei	0273
Binatone	0282, 0342	Cimline	0323, 0343
Blue Sky	0320, 0340	Citizen	0007, 0008, 0026, 0050, 0058
Blue Star	0348	City	0323, 0343
Boots	0282, 0342	Clarion	0179
BPL	0320, 0348	Clarivox	0349
Bradford	0058, 0179	Clatronic	0161, 0171, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0337, 0340, 0342, 0343, 0350, 0351
Brandt	0322, 0345	CMS	0277
Brilliant	0182	CMS Hightec	0282
Brinkmann	0320	Coby	0197
Brionvega	0320, 0339, 0349, 0350	Colortyme	0008, 0026
Britannia	0277, 0282, 0342	Commercial Solutions	0021
Brockwood	0008	Concerto	0008, 0026
Broksonic	0109, 0179	Concorde	0323, 0343
Bruns	0339	Condor	0161, 0277, 0320, 0323, 0342, 0350, 0351
BTC	0340	Contec	0179, 0277, 0323, 0342, 0343, 0344
Bush	0269, 0282, 0283, 0304, 0320, 0323, 0328, 0332, 0340, 0343, 0344, 0346, 0348, 0349, 0350, 0372, 0382, 0463, 0470, 0472	Contec/Cony	0012, 0058
Candle	0008, 0026, 0050, 0057	Continental Edison	0345
Capsonic	0337	Cosmel	0323, 0343
Carena	0320	Craig	0058, 0179
Carnivale	0050	Crosley	0010, 0037, 0171, 0339
Carrefour	0344		
Carver	0010		
Cascade	0320, 0323, 0343		
Casio	0367		

Crown	0058, 0161, 0171, 0179, 0320, 0323, 0343, 0349, 0350, 0351	Elcit	0339	Frontech	0282, 0323, 0337, 0343, 0346, 0347	Grunpy	0058, 0059, 0179
CS Electronics	0277, 0340, 0342	Electa	0348	Fujitsu	0059, 0069, 0074, 0075, 0282	Haier	0157, 0233
CTC Clatronic	0341	ELECTRO TECH	0343	Fujitsu General	0282	Halifax	0277, 0282, 0337, 0342
CTX	0205	Electroband	0055, 0107	Fujitsu Siemens	0504, 0505, 0507, 0510, 0511	Hallmark	0008, 0026, 0031
Curtis Mathes	0007, 0008, 0010, 0019, 0021, 0026, 0049, 0050, 0178	Electrograph	0176	Funai	0051, 0058, 0059, 0112, 0113, 0115, 0118, 0119, 0179, 0337	Hampton	0277, 0282, 0342
CXC	0058, 0179	Electrohome	0008, 0026, 0052, 0055	Futuretech	0058, 0179	Hanseatic	0161, 0168, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0342, 0343, 0344, 0349, 0350
Cybertron	0340	Element	0230	Galaxi	0320, 0351	Hantarex	0320, 0323, 0343
Cytron	0152	Elin	0277, 0320, 0323, 0342, 0349, 0350	Galaxis	0161, 0320	Hantor	0320
Daewoo	0007, 0008, 0026, 0037, 0053, 0167, 0266, 0275, 0277, 0282, 0315, 0320, 0323, 0331, 0335, 0342, 0343, 0350, 0381, 0465	Elite	0320, 0340, 0350	Gateway	0176, 0177, 0241	Harman/Kardon	0010
Dainichi	0277, 0340	Elman	0341	GBC	0323, 0343, 0344	Harvard	0058, 0179
Dansai	0277, 0282, 0320, 0337, 0349, 0350	Elta	0277, 0323, 0343	GE	0008, 0021, 0023, 0026, 0027, 0031, 0034, 0049, 0052, 0056, 0209	Harwood	0320, 0323
Dantax	0161, 0349	Emerson	0000, 0007, 0008, 0012, 0013, 0019, 0026, 0031, 0037, 0051, 0058, 0059, 0161, 0179, 0320, 0339	Geant Casino	0321	Havermy	0178
Dawa	0320	Emprex	0154	GEC	0282, 0320, 0342, 0347, 0349, 0350	HCM	0282, 0320, 0323, 0337, 0342, 0343, 0348
Daytron	0007, 0008, 0026, 0323, 0343	Envision	0008, 0026, 0050	Geloso	0323, 0343, 0346	Hema	0282, 0323
De Graaf	0346	Epson	0155, 0206, 0359	General Technic	0323, 0343	Hewlett Packard	0192
Decca	0282, 0320, 0342, 0349, 0350	Erres	0320, 0349, 0350	Genexxa	0320, 0340, 0347, 0350	Higashi	0277
Dell	0145, 0245	ESA	0051	GFM	0128, 0227	HiLine	0320
Denver	0358, 0362	ESC	0282	Giant	0282	Hinari	0320, 0323, 0340, 0343, 0344, 0349, 0350
Desmet	0320, 0349, 0350	Etron	0343	Gibraltar	0008, 0030, 0050, 0062	Hisawa	0321, 0340, 0348
Diamant	0320	Eurofeel	0282	GoldHand	0277	Hisense	0247
Diamond	0277	Euro-Feel	0337	Goldline	0320	Hitachi	0008, 0012, 0026, 0066, 0084, 0092, 0093, 0120, 0172, 0173, 0255, 0270, 0271, 0282, 0320, 0335, 0338, 0342, 0344, 0346, 0347, 0365, 0382, 0448, 0456, 0467, 0482
DiamondVision	0135, 0143	Euroline	0349	GoldStar	0007, 0008, 0012, 0026, 0031, 0050, 0053, 0161, 0277, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0342, 0343, 0346, 0349, 0350	Hornlyphon	0320, 0350
Dimensia	0049	Euroman	0161, 0277, 0282	Goodmans	0246, 0272, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0337, 0343, 0344, 0349, 0350, 0462, 0473, 0477	Hoshai	0340
Disney	0219	Euromann	0320, 0337, 0342, 0350	Gorenje	0161, 0351	Huanyu	0277, 0342
Dixi	0282, 0320, 0323, 0343, 0349, 0350	Europhon	0277, 0282, 0320, 0341, 0342, 0350	GPX	0129	Hygashi	0277, 0282, 0342
Dream Vision	0461, 0498	Expert	0321	Gradiente	0240	Hyper	0277, 0282, 0323, 0342, 0343
DTS	0323, 0343	Exquisit	0320	Graetz	0347	Hypson	0282, 0320, 0321, 0337, 0342, 0348, 0349, 0350
Dual	0282, 0320, 0342	Fenner	0323, 0343	Granada	0171, 0282, 0320, 0321, 0342, 0344, 0346, 0349, 0350	Hyundai	0141
Dual-Tec	0342, 0343	Ferguson	0322, 0345, 0349	Grandin	0340, 0343, 0348, 0349	Iberia	0320
Dumont	0008, 0030, 0062, 0282, 0339, 0341, 0342	Fidelity	0277, 0320, 0342, 0346	Gronic	0282	ICE	0277, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0337, 0340, 0342, 0343, 0350
Durabrand	0031, 0051, 0179, 0215	Filsai	0282	Grundig	0160, 0161, 0171, 0310, 0320	ICeS	0277
Dux	0349	Finlandia	0346			Ilo	0148, 0153
Dwin	0178	Finlux	0171, 0282, 0320, 0339, 0341, 0342, 0349, 0350			IMA	0058
Dynatron	0320, 0349, 0350	FIRST LINE	0342, 0343, 0350			Imperial	0161, 0171, 0320, 0347, 0350, 0351
Dynex	0228, 0231	Firstline	0277, 0282, 0320, 0323			Indiana	0320, 0349, 0350
EIZO	0509	Fisher	0019, 0161, 0282, 0339, 0342, 0344, 0351				
Elbe	0161, 0168, 0282, 0320	Flint	0320, 0350				
		Formenti	0171, 0277, 0336, 0339, 0342, 0349				
		Formenti/Phoenix	0277				
		Fortress	0336, 0339				
		Fraba	0161, 0320				
		Friac	0161				

Infinity	0010	KLH	0039	Magnavox	0008, 0009, 0010, 0013,	Motion	0171
InFocus	0250, 0327, 0363, 0479,	Kloss Novabeam	0057, 0058		0026, 0032, 0033, 0048,	Motorola	0052, 0178
	0508	Kneissel	0161, 0168, 0320		0050, 0128, 0211, 0212,	MTC	0008, 0026, 0050, 0053,
Ingelen	0347	Kolster	0320, 0350		0224, 0226, 0239		0161, 0277
Ingersol	0323, 0343	Konka	0340	Magnum	0337, 0343	Multi System	0349
Initial	0153	Korpel	0320, 0349, 0350	Majestic	0054	Multitech	0058, 0161, 0179, 0183,
Inno Hit	0171, 0282, 0320, 0323,	Korting	0161, 0339	Mandor	0337		0277, 0282, 0320, 0323,
	0340, 0342, 0343, 0349,	Kosmos	0320	Manesth	0282, 0320, 0337, 0342,		0341, 0342, 0343, 0344,
	0350	Koyoda	0343		0349, 0350		0346, 0349
Innovation	0337, 0343	KTV	0007, 0050, 0058, 0179,	Marantz	0008, 0010, 0026, 0050,	Murphy	0277, 0342
Insignia	0131, 0228, 0236, 0238		0183, 0282, 0342		0204, 0320, 0349, 0350	NAD	0026, 0031, 0111
Inteq	0030	Kyoto	0277, 0282	Marelli	0339	Naonis	0346
Interactive	0161	Lasat	0161	Mark	0277, 0282, 0320, 0323,	NEC	0008, 0026, 0050, 0052,
Interbuy	0323, 0343	Lenco	0323, 0343		0349, 0350		0053, 0072, 0103, 0282,
Interfunk	0161, 0320, 0339, 0347,	Lenoir	0323, 0342, 0343	Masuda	0282		0344
	0349, 0350	Leyco	0320, 0337, 0349, 0350	Matsui	0282, 0320, 0323, 0342,	Neckermann	0161, 0282, 0320, 0339,
International	0277	LG	0031, 0053, 0066, 0116,		0343, 0344, 0346, 0349,		0342, 0346, 0349, 0350,
Intervision	0161, 0282, 0320, 0337,		0117, 0140, 0161, 0164,		0350, 0455		0351
	0341, 0342		0175, 0195, 0269, 0277,	Matsushita	0017	NEI	0320, 0349, 0350
Irradio	0171, 0320, 0323, 0340,		0282, 0300, 0309, 0317,	Maxent	0147, 0176	Net-TV	0176
	0343, 0349, 0350		0320, 0323, 0328, 0342,	Mediator	0320, 0349, 0350	Neufunk	0320, 0323
Isukai	0320, 0340		0343, 0346, 0349, 0350,	Medion	0320, 0337, 0343	New Tech	0343, 0350
ITC	0282, 0342		0366, 0368, 0377, 0466,	Megapower	0140	New World	0340
ITS	0277, 0320, 0340, 0348,		0471, 0478	Megatron	0026, 0031	NewTech	0282, 0320, 0323
	0350	LG/GoldStar	0164	MElectronic	0277, 0282, 0320, 0323	Nicamagic	0277, 0342
ITT	0343, 0347	Liesenk	0349	Melvox	0321	Nikkai	0277, 0282, 0320, 0323,
ITV	0320, 0343, 0349	Liesenkotter	0320	Memorex	0019, 0026, 0031, 0053,		0337, 0340, 0342, 0349,
Janeil	0057	Life	0337, 0343		0054, 0137, 0215, 0323,		0350
JBL	0010	Lifetec	0320, 0323, 0337, 0343		0343	Nikko	0026, 0031, 0050
JC Penney	0007, 0008, 0026, 0027,	Lloyds	0323	Memphis	0323, 0343	Noblisko	0171, 0277, 0341, 0342
	0049, 0053, 0056	Loewe	0161, 0168, 0265, 0320,	Mercury	0320, 0323	Nokia	0347
JCB	0055, 0107		0330, 0352	Metz	0339	Norcent	0201
Jensen	0008, 0026	Loewe Opta	0339, 0349, 0350	MGA	0008, 0026, 0031, 0050,	Nordic	0282
JVC	0012, 0014, 0015, 0056,	Logik	0054		0053	Nordmende	0339, 0345, 0347, 0350
	0064, 0065, 0067, 0169,	Luma	0320, 0323, 0346, 0349	Micromaxx	0337, 0343	Nordvision	0349
	0174, 0297, 0314, 0344,	Lumatron	0282, 0320, 0346, 0349,	Microstar	0337, 0343	Novatronic	0320
	0350, 0375		0350	Midland	0007, 0021, 0023, 0027,	Oceanic	0321, 0347
Kaisui	0277, 0282, 0320, 0323,	Lux May	0350		0030, 0056, 0062	Okano	0161, 0320, 0351
	0340, 0342, 0343, 0348	Luxman	0008, 0026	Minerva	0171	Olevia	0102, 0199, 0200, 0207,
Kamosonic	0342	Luxor	0282, 0342, 0346	Minoka	0320, 0350		0222
Kamp	0277, 0342	LXI	0010, 0019, 0021, 0026,	Mintek	0153	ONCEAS	0342
Kapsch	0347		0027, 0031, 0049, 0111	Mitsubishi	0008, 0026, 0031, 0053,	Onwa	0058, 0179
Karcher	0161, 0320, 0342, 0343,	M Electronic	0342, 0343, 0345, 0347,		0066, 0084, 0093, 0098,	Opera	0320
	0349		0349, 0350		0150, 0178, 0289, 0320,	Oppo	0130
Kawasho	0008, 0026, 0055, 0277	MAG	0096		0339, 0344, 0350, 0376	Optimus	0017, 0019
KEC	0179	Magnadyne	0339, 0341, 0349	Mivar	0161, 0168, 0171, 0277,	Optoma	0144
Kendo	0161, 0320, 0341, 0346	Magnafon	0171, 0277, 0341, 0342		0282, 0342	Optonica	0178
Kenwood	0008, 0026, 0050			Monivision	0140	Orbit	0320, 0350
KIC	0282			Montgomery Ward	0054		
Kingsley	0277, 0342						

Orion	0043, 0146, 0283, 0320, 0323, 0328, 0343, 0349, 0350	Phonola	0277, 0320, 0339, 0349, 0350	RCA	0008, 0021, 0024, 0025, 0026, 0027, 0042, 0049, 0052, 0053, 0063, 0136, 0225	Schneider	0282, 0316, 0318, 0320, 0333, 0340, 0342, 0349, 0350, 0382
Orline	0320	Pilot	0007, 0008, 0050	Realistic	0019, 0031, 0050, 0179	Scotch	0026, 0031
Osaki	0282, 0320, 0337, 0340, 0342	Pioneer	0008, 0026, 0094, 0095, 0161, 0320, 0345, 0347, 0349, 0350, 0458, 0480	Recor	0320	Scott	0008, 0012, 0026, 0031, 0058, 0059, 0149, 0179
Oso	0340	Plantron	0320, 0323, 0337, 0350	Redstar	0320	Sears	0008, 0010, 0019, 0021, 0026, 0027, 0031, 0049, 0051, 0059, 0111
Otto Versand	0282, 0320, 0336, 0342, 0344, 0348, 0349, 0350	Playsonic	0282	Reflex	0320	SEG	0277, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0337, 0341, 0342, 0344, 0349, 0382
Pael	0277, 0342	Polaroid	0039, 0142, 0202, 0234	Revox	0161, 0320, 0349, 0350	SEI	0320
Palladium	0161, 0282, 0320, 0342, 0351	Poppy	0323, 0343	Rex	0337, 0346, 0347	SEI-Sinudyne	0339, 0341, 0347
Palsonic	0282	Portland	0007, 0008, 0026, 0053	RFT	0161, 0168, 0339	Seleco	0344, 0346, 0347
Panama	0277, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0337, 0342, 0343	Prandoni-Prince	0171, 0346	Rhapsody	0277	Sencora	0323, 0343
Panasonic	0016, 0017, 0020, 0022, 0023, 0035, 0052, 0056, 0084, 0085, 0133, 0163, 0193, 0284, 0286, 0290, 0292, 0320, 0325, 0347, 0356, 0483	Precision	0282, 0342	R-Line	0320, 0349, 0350	Sentra	0323
Panavision	0320	Prima	0157, 0243, 0323, 0343, 0347	Roadstar	0323, 0337, 0340, 0343	Serino	0277
Pathe Cinema	0161, 0168, 0277, 0321, 0342	Princeton	0140	Robotron	0339	Sharp	0000, 0001, 0002, 0003, 0007, 0008, 0012, 0026, 0060, 0088, 0089, 0091, 0138, 0165, 0170, 0178, 0198, 0229, 0262, 0278, 0279, 0291, 0308, 0312, 0336, 0344, 0354, 0370, 0449, 0450, 0451, 0464, 0474, 0476, 0481
Pausa	0323, 0343	Prism	0023, 0056	Rowa	0277, 0282	Sheng Chia	0178
Penney	0021, 0023, 0031, 0050, 0111	Profex	0323, 0343	Royal Lux	0161	Shogun	0008
Perdio	0277, 0320	Profi-Tronic	0320, 0350	RTF	0339	Siarem	0320, 0339, 0341
Perfekt	0320	Proline	0320, 0350	Runca	0030, 0050, 0062	Sierra	0320, 0350
Philco	0008, 0009, 0010, 0012, 0026, 0050, 0052, 0053, 0161, 0171, 0320, 0339	Proscan	0021, 0027, 0049	Saba	0298, 0322, 0339, 0345, 0347	Siesta	0161
Philharmonic	0282, 0342	Prosonic	0161, 0277, 0282, 0320, 0342, 0349	Saisho	0282, 0323, 0337, 0342, 0343	Signature	0054
Philips	0008, 0009, 0010, 0011, 0012, 0032, 0048, 0049, 0052, 0122, 0128, 0134, 0186, 0187, 0213, 0221, 0224, 0226, 0239, 0256, 0257, 0259, 0261, 0263, 0267, 0280, 0281, 0287, 0296, 0299, 0301, 0303, 0305, 0313, 0319, 0320, 0324, 0333, 0339, 0342, 0349, 0350, 0353, 0357, 0360, 0380, 0383, 0452, 0459, 0460	Protech	0282, 0337, 0341, 0342, 0343, 0349, 0350	Salora	0346, 0347	Silver	0277
Philips Magnavox	0011, 0032, 0033	Proton	0008, 0012, 0026, 0031	Sambers	0171, 0341	Singer	0321, 0339, 0341
Phoenix	0161, 0277, 0320, 0339, 0349, 0350	Protron	0196	Sampo	0007, 0008, 0026, 0050, 0176	Sinudyne	0320, 0339, 0341, 0349
		PROVIEW	0096, 0246	Samsung	0004, 0005, 0006, 0007, 0008, 0012, 0026, 0031, 0036, 0050, 0053, 0076, 0077, 0079, 0114, 0124, 0125, 0126, 0127, 0139, 0161, 0183, 0185, 0190, 0191, 0258, 0264, 0277, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0334, 0337, 0342, 0343, 0349, 0350, 0351, 0373, 0453, 0468	Skantic	0347
		Provision	0320, 0349	Sandra	0277, 0282, 0342	Solavox	0347
		Pulsar	0008, 0030, 0062	Sansui	0043, 0109, 0320, 0350	Sonitron	0161, 0282
		Pye	0256, 0320, 0349, 0350, 0378	Sanyo	0008, 0019, 0068, 0070, 0071, 0099, 0161, 0168, 0223, 0237, 0277, 0282, 0288, 0295, 0323, 0342, 0344, 0369, 0469	Sonoko	0282, 0320, 0323, 0337, 0342, 0343, 0349, 0350
		Pymi	0323, 0343			Sonolor	0321, 0347
		Quandra Vision	0321			Sontec	0161, 0320, 0349, 0350
		Quasar	0017, 0023, 0052, 0056			Sony	0038, 0044, 0045, 0047, 0055, 0090, 0104, 0105, 0107, 0110, 0123, 0184, 0220, 0248, 0249, 0251,
		Quelle	0282, 0320, 0337, 0342, 0349, 0350				
		Questa	0344				
		Radialva	0320				
		RadioShack	0019, 0021, 0031, 0050, 0179, 0320				
		RadioShack/Realistic	0007, 0008, 0012, 0026, 0049, 0058				
		Radiola	0282, 0320, 0349, 0350				
		Radiomarelli	0320, 0339				
		Radiotone	0161, 0320, 0323, 0350	SBR	0320, 0349		
		Rank	0344	Sceptre	0235, 0244		
				Schaub Lorenz	0347		

	0252, 0254, 0326, 0343, 0344, 0371, 0374, 0457, 0475, 0486	Techwood	0008, 0023, 0026, 0056	United	0349	Yorx	0340
		TEDELEX	0282	Universum	0161, 0171, 0282, 0320, 0337, 0349, 0350, 0351	Zanussi	0282, 0346
		Teknika	0007, 0008, 0010, 0012, 0026, 0053, 0054, 0058, 0059, 0179	Univox	0320	Zenith	0008, 0028, 0029, 0030, 0031, 0054, 0061, 0062
Sound & Vision	0340, 0341			Vector Research	0050		
Soundesign	0008, 0026, 0031, 0058, 0059, 0179	Teleavia	0345	Vestel	0282, 0320, 0346, 0347, 0349, 0350, 0351		
Soundwave	0320, 0349, 0350	Telecor	0282, 0320	Vexa	0320, 0323, 0343, 0349		
Squareview	0051	Telefunken	0320, 0322, 0345, 0350	Victor	0015, 0344, 0350		
SSS	0008, 0058, 0179	Telegazi	0320	VIDEOLAGIC	0277		
Standard	0282, 0320, 0323, 0340, 0342, 0343, 0350	Telemeister	0320	Videologique	0277, 0282, 0340, 0342		
Starlite	0058, 0179, 0320, 0323, 0349	Telesonic	0320	VideoSystem	0320, 0350		
Stenway	0348	Telestarc	0320, 0323, 0343, 0349	Videotechnic	0277, 0282		
Stern	0346, 0347	Teleton	0282, 0342	Vidikron	0010		
Strato	0320, 0323	Televideon	0277	Vidtech	0008, 0026, 0031, 0053		
Stylandia	0282	Televiso	0321	Viewsonic	0176, 0203, 0232, 0364		
Sunkai	0343	Tensai	0282, 0320, 0323, 0340, 0343, 0350	Viking	0057		
Sunstar	0320, 0323	Tesmet	0350	Viore	0148		
Sunwood	0320, 0323, 0343, 0350	Tevion	0337, 0343	Visiola	0277, 0342		
Superla	0277, 0282, 0342	Textet	0277, 0282, 0323, 0342	Vision	0282, 0320, 0350		
Superscan	0013, 0178	Thomson	0162, 0188, 0189, 0285, 0320, 0322, 0342, 0345, 0350	Vizio	0008, 0177, 0218, 0242, 0500, 0501, 0502, 0503, 0506		
SuperTech	0277, 0320, 0323			Vortec	0320, 0349, 0350		
Supra	0323, 0343	Thorn	0320, 0349	Voxson	0171, 0320, 0339, 0346, 0347, 0350		
Supre-Macy	0057	TMK	0008, 0026, 0031	Waltham	0282, 0320, 0342		
Supreme	0055, 0107	TNCi	0030	Wards	0008, 0009, 0010, 0026, 0031, 0048, 0049, 0050, 0053, 0054, 0059		
Susumu	0340	Tokai	0282, 0320, 0350	Watson	0320, 0349, 0350		
Sutron	0323, 0343	Tokyo	0277, 0342	Watt Radio	0277, 0341, 0342		
SVA	0151	Tomashi	0348	Waycon	0111		
Sydney	0277, 0282, 0342	Toshiba	0018, 0019, 0040, 0041, 0046, 0073, 0100, 0103, 0108, 0109, 0111, 0121, 0132, 0166, 0208, 0210, 0214, 0217, 0260, 0268, 0282, 0283, 0293, 0304, 0306, 0307, 0329, 0344, 0355, 0454	Wega	0320, 0339, 0344		
Sylvania	0008, 0009, 0010, 0011, 0013, 0026, 0048, 0050, 0051, 0128, 0227, 0253			Wegavox	0323		
Symphonic	0051, 0058, 0062, 0128, 0179, 0215	Totevision	0007	Weltblick	0282, 0320, 0349, 0350		
Syntax	0199	Towada	0282, 0347	Westinghouse	0107, 0216, 0220		
Syntax-Brilliant	0199	Trakton	0282	White Westinghouse	0037, 0090, 0277, 0320, 0341, 0342, 0349		
Sysline	0349	Trans Continens	0282, 0320	Wincom	0101, 0106		
Sytong	0277	Transtec	0277	Xrypton	0320		
Tandy	0178, 0282, 0336, 0340, 0342, 0347	Trident	0282	Yamaha	0008, 0026, 0050, 0053, 0080, 0081, 0082, 0083, 0086, 0087		
Tashiko	0277, 0282, 0342, 0344, 0346	Triumph	0320	Yamishi	0282, 0320		
Tatung	0052, 0177, 0282, 0320, 0342, 0349, 0350	Uher	0161, 0171, 0320, 0347, 0350	Yokan	0320		
TCM	0337, 0343	Ultravox	0277, 0320, 0339, 0341, 0342	Yoko	0161, 0277, 0282, 0320, 0323, 0337, 0340, 0342, 0343, 0349, 0350		
Teac	0282, 0320	Unic Line	0320				
Tec	0282, 0323, 0342, 0343						
Technics	0017, 0023, 0056						
TechniSat	0274, 0496, 0497, 0499						

---

## VCR

ABS	1016
Adventura	1069
Adyson	1008
Aiwa	1024, 1026, 1027, 1069
Akai	1021, 1027
Akiba	1008, 1029
Akura	1008, 1027, 1029
Alba	1008, 1009, 1024, 1025, 1029, 1030
Alienware	1016
Ambassador	1030
American High	1068
Amstrad	1008, 1009, 1026
Anitech	1008, 1029
Apex	1088
ASA	1028, 1031
Asha	1070
Asuka	1008, 1026, 1028, 1029, 1031
Audio Dynamics	1064
Audiosonic	1009
Audiovox	1071
Baird	1009, 1025, 1026, 1027
Bang & Olufsen	1017
Basic Line	1008, 1009, 1024, 1025, 1029, 1030
Baur	1028
Beaumark	1070
Bell & Howell	1065
Bestar	1009, 1025, 1030
Black Panther Line	1009, 1025
Blaupunkt	1028
Bondstec	1008, 1030
Broksonic	1100
Bush	1008, 1009, 1024, 1025, 1029, 1049, 1051, 1063, 1217
Calix	1071
Candle	1070, 1071
Canon	1068
Cathay	1009

Catron	1030	Firstline	1008, 1024, 1029, 1031	iBUYPOWER	1016	Matsushita	1068
CGE	1026, 1027	Fisher	1065	Impego	1030	Media Center PC	1016
Cimline	1008, 1024, 1029	Flint	1024	Imperial	1026	Mediator	1028
CineVision	1104	Formenti/Phoenix	1028	Inno Hit	1008, 1009, 1025, 1028, 1029, 1030	Medion	1024
Citizen	1070, 1071	Frontech	1030			MEI	1068
Clatronic	1008, 1030	Fuji	1068	Innovation	1024	Memorex	1023, 1026, 1031, 1065, 1068, 1069, 1070, 1071, 1098, 1114
Colortyme	1064	Fujitsu	1026	Instant Replay	1068		
Condor	1009, 1025, 1030	Funai	1026, 1069	Interbuy	1008, 1031	Memphis	1008, 1029
Craig	1070, 1071	Galaxy	1026	Interfunk	1028	MGN Technology	1070
Crown	1008, 1009, 1025, 1029, 1030	Garrard	1069	Intervision	1009, 1026	Micromaxx	1024
		Gateway	1016	Irradio	1008, 1029, 1031	Microsoft	1016
Curtis Mathes	1064, 1068, 1070	GBC	1029, 1030	ITT	1027	Microstar	1024
Cybernex	1070	GE	1068, 1070	ITV	1009, 1025, 1031	Migros	1026
CyberPower	1016	GEC	1028	JC Penney	1064, 1065, 1068, 1070, 1071	Mind	1016
Daewoo	1009, 1025, 1030, 1038, 1069, 1223	Geloso	1029	JCL	1068	Mitsubishi	1026, 1028, 1079
		General	1030	JVC	1007, 1018, 1027, 1039, 1064, 1065, 1066, 1067, 1078, 1089, 1092, 1093, 1094, 1095, 1113, 1208, 1209, 1212, 1213, 1215, 1218	Motorola	1068
Dansai	1008, 1009, 1029	General Technic	1024			MTC	1070
Dantax	1024	GOI	1018			Multitech	1008, 1026, 1028, 1029, 1030, 1069, 1070
Daytron	1009, 1025	GoldHand	1008, 1029			Murphy	1026
DBX	1064	Goldstar	1026, 1031, 1064, 1071			NEC	1027, 1064, 1065
De Graaf	1028	Goodmans	1008, 1009, 1025, 1026, 1029, 1030, 1031	Kaisui	1008, 1029	Neckermann	1027, 1028
Decca	1026, 1027, 1028			Karcher	1028	NEI	1028
Dell	1016	Gradiente	1069	Kendo	1008, 1024, 1025, 1030	Nesco	1008, 1029
Denko	1008	Graetz	1027	Kenwood	1027, 1064, 1065	Nikkai	1008, 1009, 1030
DiamondVision	1096	Granada	1028	Kodak	1068, 1071	Nikkai	1071
DigiFusion	1014	Grandin	1008, 1009, 1025, 1026, 1029, 1030, 1031	Korpel	1008, 1029	Niveus Media	1016
DIRECTV	1019, 1105, 1110, 1111, 1113, 1116, 1122	Grundig	1028, 1029	Kyoto	1008	Noblex	1070
		Hanseatic	1009, 1028, 1031	Lenco	1025	Nokia	1009, 1027
Dish Network	1018	Harley Davidson	1069	Leyco	1008, 1029	Nordmende	1027
Dishpro	1018	Harman/Kardon	1064	LG	1010, 1026, 1031, 1047, 1054, 1056, 1071, 1103, 1221	Northgate	1016
Dual	1009, 1027, 1028	Harwood	1008			Oceanic	1026, 1027
Dumont	1026, 1028	HCM	1008, 1029			Okano	1008, 1009, 1024
Durabrand	1114	Headquarter	1065	Lifetec	1024	Olympus	1068
Dynatech	1069	Hewlett Packard	1016	Linksys	1016	Optimus	1071
Echostar	1018	Hinari	1008, 1009, 1024, 1029	Lloyd's	1069	Orion	1023, 1024, 1051, 1115, 1217
Elbe	1009	Hisawa	1024	Loewe Opta	1028, 1031	Orson	1026
Elcotech	1008	Hitachi	1011, 1026, 1027, 1028, 1046, 1062	Logik	1008, 1029	Osaki	1008, 1026, 1029, 1031
Electrohome	1071	HNS	1110	Lumatron	1009, 1025	Otto Versand	1028
Electrohome	1071	Howard Computers	1016	Luxor	1008	Palladium	1008, 1027, 1029, 1031
Elsay	1008			LXI	1071	Panasonic	1000, 1022, 1044, 1055, 1068, 1072, 1085, 1090, 1091, 1120, 1121, 1214
Elta	1008, 1009, 1029	HP	1016	M Electronic	1026	Pathe Marconi	1027
Emerson	1008, 1020, 1068, 1069, 1071	HTS	1018	Magnavox	1020, 1068, 1114, 1126	Perdio	1026
		Hughes	1111, 1113, 1122	Magnin	1071	Philco	1008, 1068
ESC	1009, 1025	Hughes Network Systems	1110, 1116	Manesth	1008, 1029		
Etzuko	1008, 1029			Marantz	1028, 1064, 1065, 1068		
Expressvu	1018	Humax	1012, 1110, 1113	Mark	1009		
Ferguson	1027	Hush	1016	Marta	1071		
Fidelity	1008, 1026	Hypson	1008, 1009, 1024, 1029	Matsui	1024, 1031		
Finlandia	1028						
Finlux	1026, 1027, 1028						

Philips	1006, 1013, 1028, 1035, 1040, 1045, 1046, 1050, 1058, 1059, 1061, 1068, 1076, 1101, 1110, 1113, 1116, 1117, 1122, 1126, 1210, 1211	Sanky	1114	Tandberg	1009	Zenith	1114
Philips Magnavox	1076	Sansui	1023, 1027, 1106, 1115	Tandy	1065	ZT Group	1016
Phonola	1028	Sanyo	1032, 1065, 1070	Tashiko	1026, 1071		
Pilot	1071	Saville	1009	Tatung	1026, 1027, 1028		
Pioneer	1028, 1036	SBR	1028	TCM	1015, 1024, 1042		
Polaroid	1088, 1099	Schaub Lorenz	1026, 1027	Teac	1009, 1069		
Portland	1009, 1025, 1030	Schneider	1008, 1009, 1024, 1025, 1026, 1028, 1029, 1030, 1031	Tec	1008, 1009, 1030		
Prinz	1026			Technics	1068		
Profex	1029	Sears	1065, 1068, 1071	Teknika	1068, 1069, 1071		
Proline	1026	SEG	1008, 1009, 1029	Teleavia	1027		
Proscan	1019	SEI-Sinudyne	1028	Telefunken	1027		
Prosonic	1009, 1024	Seleco	1027	Teletech	1008, 1009		
Pulsar	1114	Sentra	1008, 1030	Tenosal	1008, 1029		
Pye	1028, 1102	Sentron	1008, 1029	Tensai	1008, 1026, 1029, 1031		
Quarter	1065	Sharp	1003, 1033, 1077, 1107, 1127, 1219	Tevion	1024		
Quartz	1065	Shintom	1008, 1029	Thomson	1005, 1027		
Quasar	1068	Shivaki	1031	Thorn	1027		
Quelle	1026, 1028	Shogun	1070	Tivo	1108, 1110, 1111, 1113, 1117, 1118, 1119, 1122		
Radialva	1008	Siemens	1031	TMK	1070		
RadioShack	1071	Silva	1031	Tokai	1008, 1029, 1031		
RadioShack/Realistic	1065, 1068, 1069, 1070, 1071	Silver	1009	Tonsai	1029		
Radiola	1028	Singer	1068	Toshiba	1004, 1016, 1027, 1028, 1037, 1049, 1052, 1086, 1087, 1097, 1109, 1112, 1194		
Radix	1071	Sinudyne	1028				
Randex	1071	Solavox	1030	Totevision	1070, 1071		
RCA	1019, 1068, 1070, 1075, 1110, 1113, 1122, 1125	Sonic Blue	1022, 1123	Touch	1016		
Realistic	1065, 1068, 1069, 1070, 1071	Sonneclair	1008	Towada	1008, 1029		
ReplayTV	1022, 1123	Sonoko	1009, 1025	Towika	1008, 1029		
Rex	1027	Sontec	1031	TVA	1030		
RFT	1008, 1028, 1030	Sony	1001, 1016, 1048, 1053, 1073, 1074, 1080, 1081, 1082, 1083, 1108, 1118, 1216	Uher	1031		
Ricavision	1016			UltimateTV	1019		
Roadstar	1008, 1009, 1025, 1029, 1031	Stack	1016	Ultravox	1009		
Royal	1008	Stack 9	1016	Unitech	1070		
Runco	1114	Standard	1009, 1025	United Quick Star	1009, 1025		
Saba	1027	Stern	1009	Universum	1026, 1028, 1031		
Saisho	1024, 1029	STS	1068	Vector Research	1064		
Samsung	1002, 1034, 1041, 1043, 1057, 1060, 1070, 1084, 1110, 1116, 1122, 1124, 1220, 1222	Sunkai	1024	Video Concepts	1064		
Samurai	1008, 1030	Sunstar	1026	Videon	1024		
		Suntronic	1026	Videosonic	1070		
		Sunwood	1008, 1029	Viewsonic	1016		
		Superscan	1020	Voodoo	1016		
		Sylvania	1020, 1068, 1069, 1102, 1126	Wards	1068, 1069, 1070, 1071		
				Weltblick	1031		
		Symphonic	1008, 1069, 1126	XR-1000	1068, 1069		
		Systemax	1016	Yamaha	1064, 1065		
		Tagar Systems	1016	Yamishi	1008, 1029		
		Taisho	1024	Yokan	1008, 1029		
				Yoko	1008, 1029, 1030, 1031		

---

## DVD

4Kus	2051
Accurian	2142
Advent	2155, 2251
AEG	2362
Airis	2364
Aiwa	2322
Akai	2145, 2177, 2179, 2248
Akura	2356
Alba	2064, 2165, 2186, 2337, 2346
Alco	2149
Alize	2361
Allegro	2133
Amitech	2362
Amphion MediaWorks	2195
AMW	2195, 2363
Apex	2030, 2124, 2125, 2126, 2127, 2130, 2131
Apple	2241
Arrgo	2138
Asono	2364
Aspire	2152, 2222
Astar	2240
ATACOM	2364
Audiovox	2061, 2149
Avious	2367
Awa	2363
Axion	2249
Bang & Olufsen	2128
Baze	2367
BBK	2364
Bellagio	2363
Best Buy	2359
Blaupunkt	2131
Blue Parade	2157
Boghe	2382
Brainwave	2362
Brandt	2148, 2188
Broksonic	2145, 2146
Bush	2064, 2110, 2170, 2268, 2290, 2346, 2358, 2367, 2383



California Audio Labs	2151	Elta	2341, 2361, 2362	2260, 2262, 2263, 2321,	Minowa	2367
Cambridge Audio	2354	Emerson	2129, 2137, 2150	2324, 2326, 2327, 2343,	Mintek	2131, 2245
CAT	2352, 2353	Enterprise	2129	2464, 2465, 2468, 2469,	Mitsubishi	2003
CAVS	2192	Enzer	2380	2471, 2511	Mizuda	2358, 2359
Centrum	2353	Epson	2247	Jwin	Monyka	2380
CGV	2354, 2362	ESA	2137	Kansai	Mustek	2186
Changhong	2140	Finlux	2354, 2362, 2367	Kawasaki	Mx Onda	2354
Cinetec	2363	Fintec	2377	Kennex	Mystral	2366
CineVision	2133, 2237	Fisher	2134	Kenwood	Naiko	2362
Clatronic	2358, 2367	Funai	2137	KeyPlug	Nesa	2131
Coby	2031, 2046, 2360	Gateway	2051	Kiuro	Neufunk	2380
Conia	2383	GE	2029, 2131, 2156	Kingavon	Nevir	2362
Continental Edison	2363	Gericom	2351	Kiss	Next Base	2143
Crown	2362	GFM	2226	KLH	Nexstech	2243
C-Tech	2355	Giec	2382	Koda	NU-TEC	2383
Curtis Mathes	2139	Global Solutions	2355	Koss	Onkyo	2159, 2368
CVG	2377	Global Sphere	2355	KXD	Oopla	2051
CyberHome	2022, 2098, 2138, 2187,	Go Video	2133, 2213	Landel	Oppo	2196, 2255
	2336	Goodmans	2165, 2280, 2291, 2358,	Lasonic	Optim	2381
			2371, 2376, 2382	Lawson	Optimus	2180
		GPX	2227	Lecson	Orava	2358
Cytron	2244	Gradiente	2151	Lenco	Orbit	2363
Daenyx	2363	Graetz	2380	Lennox	Orion	2073, 2110
Daewoo	2001, 2133, 2276, 2298,	Greenhill	2131	LG	Oritron	2148, 2158
	2330, 2362, 2363, 2377	Grundig	2349		P&B	2358
Daewoo International	2363	Grunkel	2362, 2366		Pacific	2355
Dalton	2357	GVG	2377		Panasonic	2011, 2024, 2034, 2042,
Dansai	2362, 2381	H&B	2358	Life		2058, 2062, 2066, 2067,
Daytek	2184, 2195, 2363	H_her	2364	Lifetec		2093, 2116, 2117, 2118,
Dayton	2363	Haaz	2354, 2355	Limit		2119, 2120, 2121, 2122,
DEC	2358	Haier	2254	Liquid Video		2123, 2151, 2159, 2164,
Decca	2362	Harman/Kardon	2047, 2135	Liteon		2166, 2167, 2172, 2173,
Denon	2059, 2151, 2193, 2332	HiMAX	2359	Loewe		2175, 2209, 2214, 2275,
Denver	2356, 2358, 2360, 2370	Hitachi	2062, 2090, 2115, 2274,	LogicLab		2277, 2278, 2281, 2282,
Denzel	2380		2282, 2316, 2359, 2380	Magnavox		2283, 2301, 2374, 2470
Desay	2205	Hiteker	2130		Parasound	2197
Diamond	2354, 2355	Home Tech Industries	2364	Magnex	peekKTON	2364
DiamondVision	2225, 2232		2364	Majestic	Philips	2008, 2012, 2025, 2044,
Disney	2010, 2028	Hyundai	2366	Marantz		2050, 2051, 2053, 2060,
DK Digital	2339	Ilo	2245	Marquant		2072, 2108, 2111, 2147,
Dmtech	2176	Initial	2131, 2245	Matsui		2159, 2163, 2169, 2174,
Dual	2380	Innovation	2182	McIntosh		2181, 2185, 2230, 2261,
Durabrand	2136	Insignia	2002, 2137, 2253	Mecotek		2266, 2267, 2286, 2287,
DVX	2355	Integra	2157	Medion		2289, 2295, 2300, 2302,
Easy Home	2359	Irradio	2053	Memorex		2317, 2328, 2338, 2342,
Eclipse	2354	iSymphony	2246	MiCO		2350, 2467
E-Dem	2364	JBL	2135	Micromaxx	Phonotrend	2367
Electrohome	2362	JVC	2020, 2096, 2097, 2099,	Microsoft	Pioneer	2016, 2017, 2018, 2019,
Elin	2362		2100, 2101, 2102, 2103,	Microstar		2035, 2092, 2094, 2095,
			2106, 2107, 2160, 2257,	Minoka		2109, 2157, 2180, 2190,

	2212, 2269, 2272, 2299, 2304, 2305, 2306, 2307, 2308, 2309, 2310, 2311, 2344, 2345, 2347, 2379	Sharp	2006, 2040, 2088, 2091, 2182, 2194, 2220, 2221, 2231, 2236, 2293, 2340	Top Sucess	2364	Panasonic	2011, 2209, 2214, 2476, 2477, 2479
Pointer	2362	Shinsonic	2245	Toshiba	2032, 2036, 2037, 2039, 2048, 2049, 2054, 2055, 2072, 2073, 2076, 2078, 2079, 2086, 2145, 2159, 2218, 2233, 2256, 2259, 2296, 2369	Philips	2510
Polaroid	2125, 2215, 2235	Sigmathek	2359, 2364	TRANScontinents	2363, 2367	Pioneer	2212, 2506
Portland	2362	Silva	2356	Transonic	2367	Samsung	2045, 2113, 2498
Powerpoint	2363	Singer	2354, 2355	Trio	2362	Sharp	2194, 2220, 2221, 2497, 2502, 2503
Prima	2252	Skymaster	2325, 2355	Trutech	2242	Sony	2075, 2453, 2458, 2459, 2507
Proceed	2130	Skyworth	2356	TruVision	2359	Toshiba	2462
Proscan	2156	Slim Art	2362	TSM	2364	Yamaha	2064, 2448, 2449, 2474, 2505
Prosonic	2360, 2377	SM Electronic	2355	Umax	2361		
Protron	2202	Sonic Blue	2133	United	2367		
Provision	2358	Sontech	2366	Urban Concepts	2159	<b>DVR</b>	
Pye	2144	Sony	2004, 2005, 2007, 2009, 2014, 2015, 2023, 2026, 2027, 2052, 2068, 2069, 2070, 2071, 2074, 2075, 2084, 2085, 2087, 2168, 2171, 2208, 2210, 2211, 2258, 2273, 2284, 2285, 2312, 2313, 2314, 2315, 2318, 2319, 2466	US Logic	2245	Bush	2110
Qwestar	2148			Venturer	2149	Hitachi	2090
Raite	2380			Viewmaster	2364	Panasonic	2066, 2067, 2093, 2116, 2117, 2119, 2120, 2122, 2123
RCA	2021, 2029, 2104, 2105, 2131, 2149, 2156, 2157, 2229	Soundmaster	2355	Vocopro	2206	Philips	2108, 2111
RedStar	2356, 2360, 2362	Soundmax	2355	VocoStar	2207	Pioneer	2016, 2017, 2018, 2019, 2092, 2094, 2095, 2109
Regent	2153	Spectra	2363	Waitec	2364	RCA	2105
Reoc	2355	Specroniq	2201	Welltech	2382	Samsung	2113, 2219
Rimax	2361	Standard	2355	Westinghouse	2063, 2250	Sharp	2088, 2091
Rio	2133	Star Cluster	2355	Wharfedale	2354, 2355	Sony	2084, 2085, 2087
Roadstar	2331, 2358	Starmedia	2358, 2364	Woxter	2361, 2364	Toshiba	2086
Ronin	2363	Sungale	2204	Xbox	2156, 2183	Victor	2475
Rotel	2203	Sunkai	2362	Xlogic	2355, 2362	Yamaha	2089, 2118
Rowa	2154, 2383	Superscan	2150	XMS	2362		
Rownsonic	2353	Supervision	2355	Xoro	2382		
Saba	2148, 2188	Sylvania	2012, 2137, 2150, 2178, 2230, 2239	Yamada	2051, 2361, 2363		
Sabaki	2355			Yamaha	2056, 2064, 2065, 2080, 2081, 2082, 2083, 2089, 2118, 2151, 2323		
Saivod	2362	Symphonic	2108, 2230	Yamakawa	2363, 2380	<b>DVD Recorder</b>	
Sampo	2141	Synn	2355	Yukai	2186	Aspire	2222
Samsung	2000, 2045, 2077, 2112, 2113, 2114, 2115, 2151, 2200, 2216, 2219, 2228, 2264, 2265, 2271, 2279, 2294, 2303, 2329, 2365	T.D.E. Systems	2366	Zenith	2002, 2129, 2133, 2159, 2223	Astar	2240
Sansui	2073, 2145, 2354, 2355, 2362	Tatung	2001, 2362			Broksonic	2146
Sanyo	2134, 2145, 2217, 2292	TCM	2182, 2297	<b>Blu-ray Disc</b>		Go Video	2213
ScanMagic	2186	Teac	2149, 2333, 2355, 2383	Denon	2452, 2500, 2501	Hitachi	2062
Schaub Lorenz	2362	Tec	2356	Hitachi	2460, 2461, 2463	Insignia	2002
Schneider	2176	Technics	2151	JVC	2472, 2473, 2478, 2496, 2499, 2511	Irradio	2053
Scientific Labs	2355	Technika	2362, 2367	JVC	2033, 2456, 2457	JVC	2100, 2101, 2106, 2107
Scott	2161, 2357	Telefunken	2353	LG	2454, 2455	LG	2033, 2057, 2223, 2238
Seeltech	2364	Tensai	2362	Liteon	2450, 2451	Liteon	2043
SEG	2162, 2355, 2363, 2380	Tevion	2182, 2355, 2357	Panasonic	2504	Panasonic	2011, 2034, 2058, 2062, 2116, 2117, 2119, 2120, 2121, 2123
		Theta Digital	2157	Philips		Philips	2008, 2044, 2050, 2051, 2147
		Thomson	2183, 2188, 2334, 2372	Pioneer		Pioneer	2017, 2035
		Tokai	2356, 2380				

Pye 2144  
 Samsung 2000, 2112, 2216  
 Sansui 2073  
 Sanyo 2217  
 Sony 2004, 2005, 2007, 2052,  
 2068, 2069, 2074, 2208,  
 2210, 2211  
 Sylvania 2239  
 Toshiba 2032, 2036, 2037, 2039,  
 2049, 2054, 2055, 2076  
 Yamaha 2056

---

## Cable

ABC 3002, 3003, 3017, 3066,  
 3067, 3086, 3093, 3119,  
 3122  
 ADB 3020  
 Adelphia 3081  
 Alcatel 3016  
 Americast 3124  
 Amstrad 3022, 3098  
 Antronix 3065, 3070  
 Archer 3070  
 Arcon 3098  
 AT&T 3095  
 Axis 3098  
 Bell South 3124  
 Cable Vision 3092  
 Cabletenna 3065  
 Cabletime 3104  
 Cableview 3087  
 Clearmaster 3127  
 ClearMax 3127  
 Clyde Cablevision 3105  
 Colour Voice 3068  
 Comcast 3084, 3088, 3117  
 Comcrypt 3107  
 Comtronics 3069  
 Contec 3074  
 Coolmax 3127  
 COX 3084  
 Cryptovision 3110  
 Director 3084  
 Eastern 3075  
 Everquest 3123  
 Fidelity 3098  
 Filmnet 3107

Filmnet Cablecrypt 3111  
 Filmnet Comcrypt 3111  
 Finlux 3097  
 Focus 3126  
 Foxtel 3022  
 France Telecom 3100, 3101  
 Freebox 3023  
 GC Electronics 3070  
 GE 3066, 3093  
 GEC 3105  
 Gemini 3072, 3123  
 General Instrument 3017, 3025, 3066, 3084,  
 3090, 3096, 3117  
 Goldstar 3120  
 Gooding 3099  
 Grundig 3098, 3099  
 Hamlin 3073, 3078  
 Hirschmann 3097  
 Hitachi 3066  
 HomeChoice 3106  
 Humax 3021, 3080, 3083  
 ITT Nokia 3097  
 Jasco 3123  
 Jerrold 3017, 3018, 3025, 3066,  
 3072, 3084, 3090, 3096,  
 3119, 3123  
 JVC 3099  
 Kabel Deutschland 3024, 3027, 3121  
 Macab 3101  
 Magnavox 3079  
 Maspro 3099  
 Matsui 3099  
 MegaCable 3117  
 Memorex 3076, 3122  
 Minerva 3099  
 Mnet 3107  
 Motorola 3025, 3026, 3084, 3088,  
 3090, 3095, 3117  
 Movie Time 3077, 3109  
 Mr Zapp 3101  
 Multichoice 3107  
 Multitech 3127  
 NEC 3064  
 NET Brazil 3085  
 Nokia 3097  
 Noos 3101

NSC 3077  
 Oak 3074  
 Pace 3006, 3089, 3121  
 Palladium 3099  
 Panasonic 3112, 3118, 3122  
 Paragon 3122  
 Philips 3068, 3071, 3079, 3099,  
 3100, 3101, 3103  
 Pioneer 3001, 3006, 3094, 3098,  
 3114, 3116, 3120  
 Popular Mechanics 3126  
 Proscan 3066, 3093  
 Pulsar 3122  
 PVP Stereo Visual Matrix 3018  
 Quasar 3122  
 RadioShack 3123, 3127  
 RCA 3030, 3031, 3087, 3118  
 Realistic 3070  
 Recoton 3126  
 Regal 3078  
 Regency 3075  
 Rembrandt 3066  
 Runco 3122  
 Sagem 3101  
 Samsung 3069, 3089, 3114, 3120  
 SAT 3098  
 Scientific Atlanta 3000, 3001, 3002, 3003,  
 3006, 3028, 3029, 3081,  
 3086, 3089, 3094, 3095,  
 3108  
 Signal 3072, 3123  
 Signature 3066  
 Sony 3092, 3125  
 Sprucer 3118  
 Standard Component 3115  
 Starcom 3017, 3072, 3119, 3123  
 Stargate 3072, 3123  
 Starquest 3072, 3123  
 Supercable 3090  
 Supermax 3127  
 Tele+1 3107, 3111  
 Telepiu 3107  
 Thomson 3082, 3091  
 TIME WARNER 3084  
 Tocom 3067  
 Torx 3017  
 Toshiba 3122

Tristar 3127  
 Tudi 3102  
 Tusa 3072, 3123  
 TV86 3077  
 Unika 3065, 3070  
 United Cable 3018, 3119  
 Universal 3065, 3070  
 Universum 3097, 3099  
 V2 3127  
 Verizon Fios 3007  
 Videoway 3019  
 View Star 3074, 3077, 3079  
 Viewmaster 3127  
 Vision 3127  
 Visiopass 3097, 3100, 3101  
 Vortex View 3127  
 Wittenberg 3098  
 Zenith 3113, 3122, 3124  
 Zentek 3126

---

## Satellite

AB Sat 4216, 4217  
 AccessHD 4104  
 ADB 4220  
 AGS 4216  
 Akai 4053, 4055  
 Alba 4001, 4004, 4006, 4007,  
 4062, 4217  
 Aldes 4005, 4007, 4010  
 Allsat 4048, 4053, 4055  
 Allsonic 4005, 4008, 4024  
 Alltech 4217  
 Alpha 4053  
 Alpha Digital 4104  
 Alphastar 4077  
 Amitronica 4217  
 Amstrad 4011, 4035, 4217, 4218  
 Anglo 4217  
 Ankaro 4005, 4008, 4024, 4217  
 Anttron 4001, 4004  
 Apollo 4001  
 Armstrong 4011, 4053  
 Artec 4100  
 Asat 4053, 4055  
 ASLF 4217  
 Astacom 4216  
 Astra 4009, 4011, 4054, 4217,  
 4219

Astro	4004, 4008, 4010, 4015, 4024, 4213, 4218, 4219	Digital Stream	4105	FinnSat	4050, 4052	Intervision	4048, 4219
AudioTon	4004, 4048	DIRECTV	4056, 4064, 4067, 4068, 4070, 4071, 4074, 4107, 4116, 4119, 4121, 4122, 4123, 4127, 4192, 4193, 4194, 4195, 4196, 4197, 4198, 4199, 4200, 4201, 4202, 4203, 4206, 4207, 4221	Flair Mate	4217	ITT Nokia	4006
Aurora	4222	Discoverer	4212	Foxtel	4222	Jerrold	4019
Austar	4222	Discovery	4216	Freecom	4001, 4049, 4218	Johansson	4013
Axiel	4216	Diseqc	4216	FTEmaximal	4024, 4217	JOK	4216
Axis	4008, 4009, 4024, 4050	Dish Network	4018, 4065, 4089, 4092, 4094, 4095, 4117	Fuba	4001, 4008, 4014, 4015, 4024, 4055, 4215	JSR	4048
Best	4008, 4024	Dishpro	4018, 4117	Galaxis	4005, 4008, 4009, 4024, 4048, 4050, 4215, 4222	JVC	4029, 4065, 4089, 4117
Blaupunkt	4015	Distrisat	4053	GE	4066, 4093, 4111, 4197	Kamm	4217
Blue Sky	4217	Ditristrad	4048	General Instrument		Kathrein	4015, 4034, 4042, 4053, 4055, 4063, 4215, 4216, 4217
Boca	4011, 4054, 4059, 4217	DNT	4014, 4053, 4055		4019, 4073	Kathrein Eurostar	4215
Boston	4216	Drake	4072	GMI	4011	Klap	4216
Brain Wave	4013	DStv	4222	GOI	4117	Konig	4219
Broadcast	4012	Dune	4024	Goldbox	4213	Kosmos	4049
Broco	4217	Echostar	4014, 4018, 4065, 4089, 4117, 4217	GoldStar	4049	KR	4004
BSkyB	4035, 4041	Einhell	4001, 4005, 4011, 4217, 4218	Goodmans	4002, 4006, 4029	Kreiselmeier	4015
BT	4216	Elap	4216, 4217	Goodmind	4111	K-SAT	4217
Bubu Sat	4217	Elekta	4010	Grandin	4031	Kyostar	4001
Bush	4006, 4045	Elsat	4217	Grothusen	4001, 4049	L&S Electronic	4024
Cambridge	4218	Elta	4001, 4008, 4024, 4048, 4053, 4055	Grundig	4004, 4006, 4015, 4035, 4211, 4218, 4222	Lasat	4008, 4010, 4024, 4054, 4212, 4215, 4219
Canal Satellite	4213	Emanon	4001	Hänsel & Gretel	4219	Lasonic	4108
Canal+	4213	Emme Esse	4008, 4024	Hantor	4001, 4013	Lenco	4001, 4024, 4049, 4215, 4217, 4219
CaptiveWorks	4099	Engel	4217	Hanuri	4010	Leng	4013
Channel Master	4007, 4110	Ep Sat	4006	Hauppauge	4044	Lennox	4048
Chaparral	4075	EURIEULT	4031	Heliocom	4219	Lenson	4218
CHEROKEE	4216	Eurodec	4052	Helium	4219	Lexus	4053
Chess	4212, 4217	Europa	4053, 4218, 4219	Hinari	4007	LG	4049, 4103, 4107
CityCom	4006, 4215, 4219	Europhon	4219	Hirschmann	4015, 4024, 4210, 4216, 4218, 4219	Lifesat	4008, 4024, 4212, 4217
Clatronic	4013	Eurosat	4011	Hisawa	4013	Lifetec	4008
CNT	4010	Eurosky	4008, 4011, 4024, 4215, 4218, 4219	Hisense	4016	Lorenzen	4219
Comag	4080, 4081, 4082, 4083, 4086	Eurostar	4011, 4215, 4219	Hitachi	4006, 4114, 4199, 4203	Lorraine	4049
Commlink	4005	Eutelsat	4217	Homecast	4084, 4085, 4087	Lupus	4008, 4024
Comtech	4050	Exator	4001, 4004	Houston	4048	Luxor	4218
Condor	4008, 4024, 4219	Expressvu	4117	HTS	4117	Lyonnaise	4052
Connexions	4014, 4024	Fenner	4024, 4212, 4217	Hughes	4064, 4068, 4192, 4194, 4196, 4202	Macab	4052
Conrad	4024, 4215, 4218, 4219	Ferguson	4006, 4052, 4214	Hughes Network Systems		Magnavox	4101, 4127
Conrad Electronic	4217, 4219	Fidelity	4218		4071	Manata	4031, 4216, 4217
Contec	4050	Finlandia	4006	Humax	4025, 4030, 4060, 4097	Manhattan	4006, 4010, 4048, 4216
Coolsat	4096	Finlux	4006	Huth	4005, 4011, 4012, 4013, 4048, 4050, 4219, 4223	Marantz	4055
Cosat	4048			Hypson	4031	Mascom	4010
Coship	4109			Ilo	4016	Maspro	4006, 4217
Crown	4011			Imex	4031	Matsui	4216
Daeryung	4014			Innovation	4008	Max	4219
Daewoo	4057, 4217			Insignia	4107	Mediabox	4213
DDC	4007			Intertronic	4011	Mediamarkt	4011
Delega	4007					Mediasat	4009, 4213, 4218
Dew	4050					Medion	4008, 4024, 4217
Diamond	4051						
Digiality	4219						

Medison	4217	Panasonic	4006, 4035, 4036, 4121, 4124, 4126, 4198, 4221	Samsung	4000, 4001, 4003, 4032, 4064, 4069, 4071, 4120, 4123, 4196, 4200	Tandy	4004
Mega	4053, 4055					Tantec	4006
Memorex	4127	Panda	4006, 4219	SAT	4007, 4218	TCM	4008
Metronic	4001, 4004, 4005, 4010, 4028, 4031, 4217	Pansat	4125	Sat Cruiser	4223	Techniland	4012
Metz	4015	Patriot	4216	Sat Partner	4001, 4004, 4010, 4013, 4049, 4218	TechniSat	4014, 4021, 4026, 4027, 4038, 4039, 4053, 4212, 4213, 4218
Micro electronic	4217, 4218, 4219	Paysat	4127	Sat Team	4217	Technology	4222
Micro Technology	4217	PCT	4110	Satcom	4012, 4219	Technosat	4223
MicroGem	4106	Philco	4101	Satec	4217	Technowelt	4219
Micromaxx	4008, 4024	Philips	4006, 4033, 4053, 4055, 4061, 4068, 4071, 4127, 4196, 4201, 4202, 4203, 4206, 4213, 4216	Satelco	4024	Teco	4011, 4054
Microstar	4008			Satford	4012	Telanor	4007
Microtec	4217	Phoenix	4050	Satmaster	4012	Telasat	4215, 4219
Minerva	4015	Phonotrend	4005, 4006, 4048	Satplus	4212	Telecom	4217
Mitsubishi	4006, 4015, 4202	Pioneer	4046, 4213	Schneider	4008, 4212, 4216	Telefunken	4001, 4017, 4216
Mitsumi	4054	Polsat	4052	Schwaiger	4051, 4212, 4219	Teleka	4004, 4011, 4014, 4218, 4219
Morgan's	4011, 4053, 4054, 4055, 4217	Predki	4013	SCS	4215	Telemaster	4010
Motorola	4019, 4088, 4090, 4091	Premiere	4048, 4213	Seemann	4009, 4011, 4014	Telesat	4219
Multichoice	4222	Priesner	4011	SEG	4001, 4008, 4013, 4024	Telestari	4212, 4213, 4218
Multitec	4212	Primestar	4076	Seleco	4048	Televest	4006, 4218
Muratto	4049	Profile	4216	Servi Sat	4031, 4217	Telewire	4048
Mysat	4217	Promax	4006	Siemens	4015	Tempo	4223
Navex	4013	Prosat	4005, 4007	Silva	4049	Tevion	4008, 4217
Neuhaus	4009, 4048, 4217, 4218, 4219	Proscan	4066, 4093, 4122, 4197	Skantin	4217	Thomson	4006, 4020, 4052, 4058, 4208, 4213, 4215, 4216, 4217, 4219
Neusat	4217	Protek	4051	Skardin	4009	Thorens	4051
Next Level	4019	Proton	4016	Skinsat	4218	Thorn	4006
NextWave	4223	Provision	4010	SKR	4217	Tivax	4104
Nikko	4011, 4217	Quadral	4005, 4007, 4008, 4024, 4216	Skymaster	4005, 4017, 4022, 4212, 4217	Tivo	4196
Nokia	4006, 4040	Quelle	4015, 4215, 4219	Skymax	4053, 4055	Tokai	4053
Nordmende	4001, 4006, 4007, 4010, 4052	Quiero	4052	SkySat	4212, 4217, 4218, 4219	Tonna	4006, 4012, 4048, 4217, 4218
Nova	4222	RadioShack	4019	Skyvision	4048	Toshiba	4194, 4202, 4203
Novis	4013	Radiola	4053, 4055	SM Electronic	4212, 4217	Triad	4049
Oceanic	4051	Radix	4014, 4037	Smart	4215, 4217	Triasat	4218
Octagon	4001, 4004, 4050	Rainbow	4004	Sony	4067, 4070, 4213	Triax	4015, 4215, 4217, 4218
Okano	4011	RCA	4066, 4093, 4112, 4113, 4116, 4118, 4119, 4122, 4197, 4207	SR	4011, 4054	Turnsat	4217
Optex	4048			Star Choice	4019	Tvonics	4214
Optus	4213, 4222, 4223	Realistic	4078	Starland	4217	Twinner	4031, 4217
Orbitech	4001, 4212, 4213, 4218	Redpoint	4009	Starring	4013	UEC	4222
OSat	4004	Redstar	4008, 4024	Start Trak	4001	Uher	4212
Otto Versand	4015	RFT	4005, 4053, 4055	Strong	4001, 4004, 4008, 4024, 4049, 4222	UltimateTV	4070
Pace	4006, 4015, 4035, 4043, 4047, 4216	Roadstar	4217	STS	4115	Uniden	4079, 4127
Pacific	4051	Roch	4031	STVI	4031	Unisat	4011, 4050, 4053
Packsat	4216	Rover	4024, 4217	Sumida	4011	Unitor	4013
Palcom	4007	Saba	4010, 4215, 4216, 4219	Sunny Sound	4024	Universum	4015, 4215, 4219
Palladium	4011, 4218	Sabre	4006	Sunsat	4217	US Digital	4016
Palsat	4212, 4218	Sagem	4023, 4052	Sunstar	4011, 4024, 4054	Variosat	4015
Panasat	4222	Sakura	4050	Supermax	4223		
				Tandberg	4052		

Vega 4024  
 Ventana 4053, 4055  
 Viewsat 4098  
 Visiosat 4013, 4048, 4216, 4217  
 Voom 4019  
 Vortec 4001  
 Welltech 4212  
 WeTeKom 4212, 4218  
 Wevasat 4006  
 Wewa 4006  
 Winersat 4013  
 Wisi 4006, 4014, 4015, 4218,  
 4219  
 Woorisat 4010  
 Worldsat 4216  
 Xrypton 4024  
 XSat 4217  
 Zehnder 4008, 4010, 4024, 4209,  
 4215  
 Zenith 4102, 4107, 4195  
 Zodiac 4004

---

### CD

Yamaha 5082, 5095

---

### CD Recorder

Yamaha 5083

---

### MD

Yamaha 5080, 5081, 5086

---

### Tape

Yamaha 5084, 5087

---

### Tuner

Yamaha 5066, 5085, 5088, 5090,  
5092

---

### XM

Yamaha 5091, 5093

---

### SIRIUS

Yamaha 5064, 5067

---

### DOCK

Yamaha 5068, 5089

---

### NET

Yamaha 5071, 5076, 5079, 5094

---

### LD

Yamaha 2080

---

### Amplifier

Yamaha 5019, 5020, 5098

---

### Apple TV

Apple 2241

“Apple TV” is a trademark or registered mark of Apple Inc.